# La Text Encoding Initiative

La TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) est un projet universitaire pluridisciplinaire visant à uniformiser autant que possible le codage de documents en vue de leur échange et de leur publication en ligne ou hors ligne. Il s'agit d'un format de codage de documents dit « structuré » : il a besoin d'un langage, XML, pour aider à la saisie d'un texte en lui donnant une structure compatible à la fois avec les exigences des différentes communautés qui l'utilisent (bibliothécaires, historiens, philosophes, spécialistes de littérature, linguistes, amateurs) et avec les possibilités des outils de consultation. Les recommandations du consortium TEI (http://www.tei-c.org/) dans sa version P5 ont été suivies, en s'inspirant du *Manuel TEI des Cahiers Gutenberg*[[1]](#footnote-2) de 1996 ainsi que du [Manuel de la BFM](http://bfm.ens-lyon.fr/IMG/pdf/Manuel_Encodage_TEI.pdf) pour élaborer le présent manuel. Cet ouvrage n'a pas pour objectif de remplacer la lecture attentive des directives de la TEI (<http://www.tei-c.org/P5/Guidelines/>), mais d'en décrire une application et de guider son utilisation pour les textes allant du début de l'imprimerie à la période de normalisation typographique au XIXe siècle. Nous nous appuyons sur des exemples pratiques. Trois ouvrages du XVIe siècle français nous ont servi à illustrer concrètement les principaux usages d'encodage TEI :

1. Louise Labé, *Euvres*, Lyon, Jean de Tournes, 1555[[2]](#footnote-3) ;
2. [Elie VINET ?], *Discours non plus mélancoliques que divers*, Poitiers, Enguilbert de Marnef, 1556[[3]](#footnote-4) ;
3. François Rabelais, *Le Tiers Livre*, Paris, Chrétien Wechel, 1546, et Paris, Michel Fezandat, 1552.[[4]](#footnote-5)

Leur structure complexe et les problèmes divers rencontrés au cours de leur encodage ont permis de vérifier l'adéquation des éléments existant dans la TEI —voire d'en proposer d'autres lorsque cela s'est révélé nécessaire—, et d'élaborer un protocole qui guide l'application à d'autres textes publiés pendant trois siècles. Conçu en premier lieu à l'usage des [BVH](http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/index.htm) (« Bibliothèques Virtuelles Humanistes ») du Centre d'Études Supérieures de la Renaissance (CESR) pour des textes français de la Renaissance, ce manuel pourra servir de base à d'autres projets portant sur d'autres documents manuscrits ou imprimés.

Si les exemples donnés sont français, la TEI « Renaissance et temps modernes » ne réalise pas un encodage spécifique des textes écrits en cette langue, elle offre la possibilité d'usages multilingues de la description structurelle. L'universalité des éléments permet la compatibilité des analyses, et les sources numérisées dans le cadre des BVH relèvent de tous les domaines encyclopédiques, dans plusieurs langues anciennes et modernes.

Cette application montre comment on peut adapter les éléments TEI à la description des textes anciens, en respectant leur présentation originale : pagination, lignage, disposition des titres, insertion des éléments illustrés, caractéristiques typographiques. Elle se fonde sur une transcription « quasi-diplomatique »[[5]](#footnote-6) du texte, soucieuse de donner le plus grand nombre possible d'informations tout en autorisant les traitements automatiques pour les recherches sur la langue, les données historiques, les différentes versions du document et les variantes dont le niveau de précision peut être adapté aux recherches désirées.

Cette représentation informatique du document est le plus petit dénominateur commun aux exigences des différentes communautés des sciences humaines. Elle leur laisse le soin d'y ajouter des annotations relevant de leurs spécialités. Les recommandations de ce manuel sont autant que possible d'ordre générique, autorisant des options qui permettent de les adapter à d'autres bases textuelles.

Par rapport aux usages habituels de la TEI, les difficultés rencontrées lors de son application aux textes de cette période viennent toutes du désir de fidélité à l'exemplaire transcrit. Nous avons tenté de rendre compatibles l'exigence de restitution et la possibilité d'effectuer des requêtes impliquant des comptages, et donc une certaine régularisation, notamment des graphies multiples. L'un des principaux intérêts du langage XML est de permettre de résoudre par l'encodage la très grande variation typographique et textuelle des documents : cette souplesse ne doit pas cependant être un frein à l'acquisition et à l'encodage rapides des corpus textuels. Nous avons utilisé cette procédure en même temps que nous développons, avec des laboratoires d'informatique, des routines d'auto­matisation fondées sur l'analyse de structure, ce qui constitue l'un des axes de recherche interdisciplinaire du projet « BVH »[[6]](#footnote-7).

Au fur et à mesure que l'équipe a progressé dans la mise au point de cette application, il est apparu qu'une telle structure pouvait aussi servir à modéliser les ouvrages qui ne seraient publiés qu'en mode image, mais dont les divisions seraient naturellement de même nature : titres, chapitres, para­graphes, éléments illustrés, etc., de façon à préparer et à faciliter l'alignement des deux modes de présentation du texte, un idéal que les usagers des bibliothèques numériques attendent avec impatience et auquel le consortium TEI travaille.

Les œuvres encodées peuvent être des manuscrits ou des imprimés, mais les sources textuelles qui ont servi à l'élaboration du manuel d'encodage sont des imprimés. La nature même du texte influe sur la structure du document : un poème ne sera pas encodé comme un roman car sa structure n'est pas la même (strophes pour le premier et paragraphes dans des chapitres pour le second). Moyennant quelques modifications, ce manuel pourra aussi s'appliquer à l'encodage des manuscrits[[7]](#footnote-8).

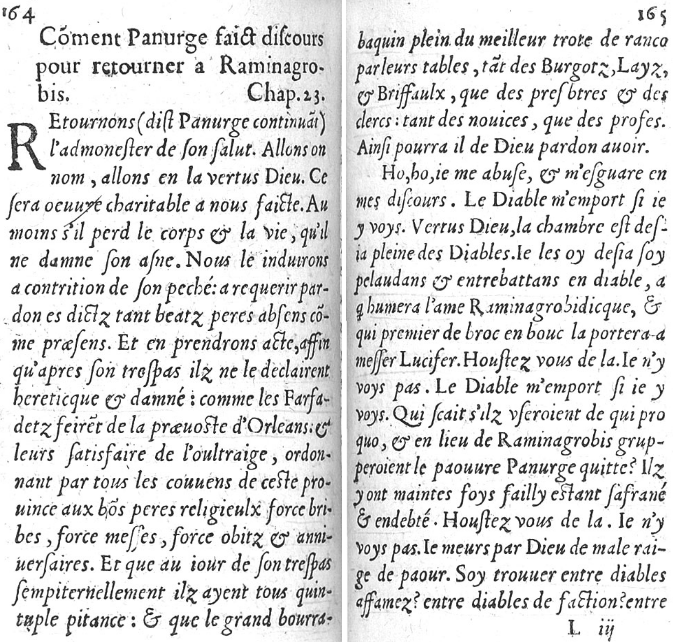
*Manuel d'encodage TEI*   
*Renaissance et temps modernes*

Nicole Dufournaud (auteur principal, v1-2), Marie-Luce Demonet (responsable scientifique), Toshinori Uetani (responsable scientifique), Thierry Vincent ( auteur, v1), Vanessa le Rolle (auteur, v2), Laetitia Bontemps (auteur, v2), Jorge Fins (auteur, v3), Lauranne Bertrand (auteur, v3), Alice Nué (contributeur, v2), Sandrine Breuil (contributeur, v2-3), Rémi Jimenes (contributeur, v2-3), Lou Burnard (contributeur, v1-2 ; TEI consortium), and Jean-Daniel Fekete (contributeur, v2 ; INRIA)

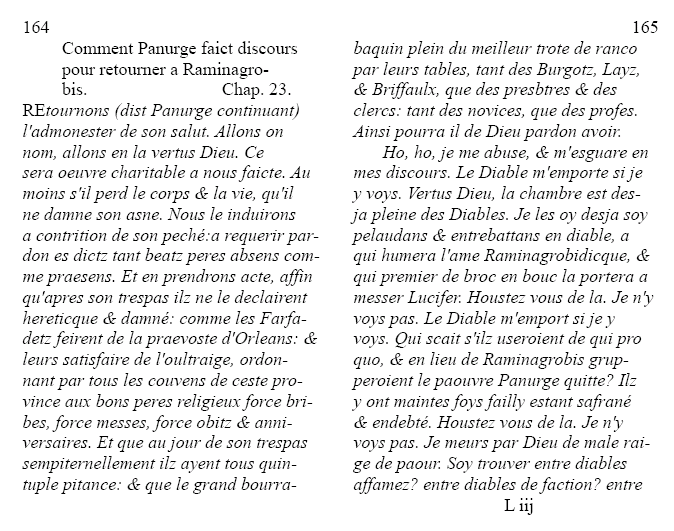
# Notions

## Transcription et encodage

Commençons par deux pages du Tiers Livre de Rabelais (1546) :



Une transcription effectuée avec un traitement de texte donne le résultat suivant :



Les limites de cette transcription établie avec un traitement de texte apparaissent ainsi :

* les numéros de page, la signature (L iij) et le titre du chapitre ne sont pas délimités et font partie du texte ;
* les paragraphes se différencient grâce à des fins de ligne forcées et un retrait d'alinéa ;
* les choix éditoriaux ne sont pas explicites : les abréviations sont développées ; les césures de mots en fin de ligne sont respectées ;
* les noms de personnes et de lieux ne sont pas repérables.

Nous présentons le même exemple sous une troisième forme conforme aux recommandations de XML/TEI qui rend explicites les règles de codage :

* les numéros de page et la signature font l'objet d'une délimitation spécifique et le saut de page est distinct ;
* le texte est explicitement structuré : titre du chapitre et paragraphes ;
* les noms de personnes et de lieux sont marqués ;
* les rendus typographiques sont indiqués ;
* il a été ajouté un « sic » pour marquer le mot « asne » là où on attendait « ame » ;
* les césures de fin de ligne sont marquées ;
* le caractère & est remplacé par &amp;[[8]](#footnote-9).

<**div** **xml:id**="n26" **type**="chapitre" **n**="23">  
 <**fw** **place**="top-left" **type**="pageNum">164</**fw**>  
 <**head**>  
  <**lb**/>Comment <**name**>Panurge</**name**> faict discours  
 <**lb**/>pour retourner a <**name**>Raminagro-  
  <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>bis</**name**>.<**space** **unit**="cm" **quantity**="1.5"/>Chap. 23.  
 </**head**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**hi** **rend**="larger">R</**hi**>Etournons (dist <**name**>Panurge</**name**> continuant)  
 <**lb**/>l'admonester de son salut. Allons on  
 <**lb**/>nom, allons en la vertus Dieu. Ce  
 <**lb**/>sera oeuvre charitable a nous faicte. Au  
 <**lb**/>moins s'il perd le corps &amp; la vie, qu'il  
 <**lb**/>ne damne son <**sic**>asne</**sic**>. Nous le induirons  
 <**lb**/>a contrition de son peché: a requerir par-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>don es dictz tant beatz peres absens com-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>me praesens. Et en prendrons acte, affin  
 <**lb**/>qu'apres son trespas ilz ne le declairent  
 <**lb**/>hereticque &amp; damné comme les Farfa-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>detz feirent de la praevoste d'<**placeName** **type**="ville">Orleans</**placeName**>: &amp;  
 <**lb**/>leurs satisfaire de l'oultraige, ordon-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>nant par tous les couvens de ceste pro-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>vince aux bons peres religieulx force bri-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>bes, force messes, force obitz &amp; anni-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>versaires. Et que au jour de son trespas  
 <**lb**/>sempiternellement ilz ayent tous quin-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>tuple pitance: &amp; que le grand bourra-  
     
 <**pb** **n**="173" **xml:id**="B372616101\_3537\_0173"/>  
  <**fw** **place**="top-right" **type**="pageNum">165</**fw**>  
  <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>baquin plein du meilleur trote de ranco  
 <**lb**/>par leurs tables, tant des Burgotz, Layz,  
 <**lb**/>&amp; Briffaulx, que des presbtres &amp; des  
 <**lb**/>clercs: tant des novices, que des profes.  
 <**lb**/>Ainsi pourra il de Dieu pardon avoir.  
 </**p**>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**p** **rend**="indent">Ho, ho, je me abuse, &amp; m'esguare en  
 <**lb**/>mes discours. Le Diable emport si je  
 <**lb**/>y voys. Vertus Dieu, la chambre est des-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>ja pleine des Diables. Je les oy desja soy  
 <**lb**/>pelaudans &amp; entrebattans en diable, a  
 <**lb**/>qui humera l'ame Raminagrobidicque, &amp;  
 <**lb**/>qui premier de broc en bouc la portera a  
 <**lb**/>messer <**name**>Lucifer</**name**>. Houstez vous de la. Je n'y  
 <**lb**/>voys pas. Le Diable m'emport si je y  
 <**lb**/>voys. Qui scait s'ilz useroient de qui pro  
 <**lb**/>quo, &amp; en lieu de <**name**>Raminagrobis</**name**> grup-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>peroient le paouvre <**name**>Panurge</**name**> quitte? Ilz  
 <**lb**/>y ont maintes foys failly estant safrané  
 <**lb**/>&amp; endebté. Houstez vous de la. Je n'y  
 <**lb**/>voys pas. Je meurs par Dieu de male rai-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>ge de paour. Soy trouver entre diables  
 <**lb**/>affamez? entre diables de faction? entre  
     
 <**fw** **place**="bot-right" **type**="sig">L iij</**fw**>  
 </**p**>  
</**div**>

Remarquons l'indentation des lignes dans notre présentation : ces retraits permettent une bonne appréciation visuelle de la structure du document. L'indentation n'est pas obligatoire, mais elle est fortement conseillée.

Le texte a 3 niveaux de structure : physique, logique et sémantique. L'encodage montre les divisions de type chapitre, composées de paragraphes dans lesquels se juxtaposent des lignes qu'il est possible de numéroter.

## Principes de balisage XML

« Les éléments, qui sont les structures de base des documents XML, sont délimités par des balises de début et des balises de fin qui portent le contenu ». Voici une définition parmi beaucoup d'autres.

TEI est une norme de codage de textes qui repose sur XML. Des marques sont utilisées pour identifier le contenu du texte : elles sont appelées « balises » (en anglais « tags »). Dans XML, le marquage est constitué des chevrons « < » et « > », par exemple :

<**title**>Discours non plus melancoliques que divers...</**title**>

Dans cet exemple, les chevrons <...> entourent le mot title pour constituer la balise <title>.

En général, la séquence textuelle est encadrée par une balise ouvrante et une balise fermante :

<**p**>Le Tiers Livre de François Rabelais.</**p**>

Le p est marqué deux fois : le premier est dans la balise ouvrante <p> ; le second est dans la balise fermante </p>. La barre « / » signifie la fin du marquage des éléments du texte.

Nous pouvons reprendre notre premier exemple, celui du titre :

<**title**>Discours non plus mélancoliques ...</**title**>

Il y a deux règles essentielles dans XML : la syntaxe des balises telle que nous venons de la décrire et la règle d'imbrication stricte des éléments. Ainsi, on peut imbriquer un élément dans un autre :

<**p**>Le Tiers Livre de <**name**>François Rabelais</**name**>.</**p**>

Il ne faut pas faire chevaucher les éléments comme le montre l'exemple **(non valide)** suivant :

<p>Le Tiers Livre de <name>François Rabelais.</p></name>

Un fichier XML est organisé comme une arborescence d'éléments. Les relations sont hiérarchiques.

Ces règles simples sont fondamentales : si elles ne sont pas suivies scrupuleusement, le document XML produit est invalide. Ces erreurs peuvent facilement être évitées à l'aide d'un schema[[9]](#footnote-10) (DTD, RelaxNG ou autre).

La TEI repose sur XML pour sa syntaxe. Tout document TEI doit être conforme aux règles édictées précédemment, avec une liste d'éléments valides et des règles d'emboîtements autorisées.

On appelle « élément » la partie du texte qui se trouve dans les balises après le chevron « < » de la balise ouvrante, et répétée dans la balise fermante. Dans l'exemple précédent, l'élément est indiqué par la lettre p qui signifie paragraph[[10]](#footnote-11). Dorénavant, nous dirons « élément » pour signifier l'élément de la balise ; par exemple, nous écrirons l'élément paragraph ainsi : <p>.

Deux cas sont possibles :

* les éléments ont un contenu, constitué d'une partie d'un texte.

<**title**>Le Tiers Livre</**title**>

Le texte encodé est « Le Tiers Livre » et l'élément TEI est « <title> ».

* les éléments n'ont pas de contenu : les balises se raccourcissent alors en une seule grâce au caractère / qui se positionne juste avant le chevron fermant ; par exemple, le saut de page ou page break :

<**pb**/>

### Éléments

Les éléments peuvent eux-mêmes être définis et classés dans deux catégories [[11]](#footnote-12):

1. Dans la première catégorie, la structure du document est définie : il est possible de dresser l'organisation logique des œuvres comme la page de titre, les pièces liminaires, etc. La transcription physique du document signale les principaux traits éditoriaux ainsi que les informations supplémentaires comme les déchirures, les corrections, les ajouts, les suppressions, les abréviations. Dans le cas d'une source imprimée, les éléments éditoriaux diffèrent et concernent la typographie : titre courant, pied de page, signatures. Nous appelons cette catégorie : balisage formel et typographique.
2. La seconde est composée d'éléments analytiques succincts comme l'indication des noms propres, des toponymes, des dates ou de tout élément d'étude pour lequel il est possible de dresser des typologies. Nous appelons cette catégorie : balisage sémantique.

Il existe une hiérarchie dans les éléments. Une certaine catégorie d'éléments est dite imbriquée dans une autre catégorie d'éléments. Par exemple, l'adresse est décomposée selon le modèle actuel, par exemple « rue » et « ville » ; l'élément <address> comprend toujours l'élément <addrLine>, soit une ligne composant l'adresse. Il n'est pas utilisé seul. L'adresse du CESR est par exemple :

<**address**>  
 <**addrLine**>59 rue Néricault-Destouches</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>Tours Cedex</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>France</**addrLine**>  
</**address**>

Dans certaines configurations, certains éléments indépendants peuvent être imbriqués dans d'autres : par exemple, l'élément <date> s'utilise seul ou parfois imbriqué dans d'autres éléments comme dans celui qui est dédié à la bibliographie <bibl>.

Souvent, les éléments ne suffisent pas. Pour les caractériser, on a besoin d'y associer un paramètre spécifique : ce sont les « attributs ».

### Attributs

On appelle « attribut » un paramètre associé à un élément. Il peut être simple comme *@n* pour number ou *@name*, ou plus élaboré comme *@resp*="#ND" pour pointer vers un autre endroit du fichier : le caractère # signifie que "ND" est un identifiant référencé dans le fichier (il renvoie à "responsable de l'encodage : Nicole Dufournaud", par exemple)[[12]](#footnote-13).

Un attribut est lui-même associé à une valeur. Par exemple, une date sera encodée ainsi :

<**date** **when**="1515-04-28">28 avril 1515</**date**>

Dorénavant, nous écrirons les attributs sous la forme suivante :

attribut="valeur"

ou encore précédé de l'arobase :

@attribut

Il existe des attributs globaux – c'est-à-dire utilisés par tous les éléments – mais également des attributs spécifiques à quelques éléments. Par exemple, l'attribut *@n* pour number est un attribut global alors que *@when* est un attribut réservé à l'élément <date>.

## Structure globale TEI

La structure de base d'un texte TEI repose sur un document original[[13]](#footnote-14). Dans le projet BVH, le document est en général un livre imprimé, mais ce peut être également un manuscrit. La structure d'un texte TEI décrit le contenu d'un document manuscrit ou imprimé qui comprend une partie textuelle prépondérante.

Comme la structure d'un document touche à l'aspect physique – il est composé de feuillets consti­tués de pages – on dit que la structure est physique. Une description simple du document peut être la suivante : la page de titre, les pages liminaires, le corps du texte et les annexes. La page de titre – s'il y en a une – est composée d'un ou de plusieurs titres, d'un auteur, etc. La page d'un imprimé peut être décrite ainsi : un numéro de page, un titre courant, un pied de page, etc.

À la structure physique du document se combine une structure logique : l'organisation du contenu et son découpage en parties, chapitres et sections. Si la structure physique s'adresse à l'œil, en revanche on entend par structure logique l'organisation du document en entités comme titre, chapitre, section, para­graphe, note, citation, tableau, liste, etc.

La notion de structure est fondamentale pour éditer, échanger et analyser des textes grâce aux recommandations TEI. S'y ajoute une autre notion : celle de métadonnées TEI que l'on encode dans le TEIheader ou header. Tout texte de format TEI est composé d'un header TEI placé avant le corps du texte lui-même. Le header contient des informations analogues à celles que l'on trouve sur la page de titre d'un texte imprimé complétées par l'aspect numérique de la source : nous parlons de page de titre électronique.

Les noms propres sont balisés sémantiquement dans le texte et l'encodage des interventions éditoriales, que celles-ci soient contemporaines de l'édition ou bien le fait d'un encodage récent, permettent d'enrichir le texte d'informations sur l'histoire de son édition, sur les variantes, annotations critiques, linguistiques, etc.

L'encodage global d'un document standard se présente ainsi :

<**TEI** xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <**teiHeader**>...  
 </**teiHeader**>  
 <**text**>  
  <**front**>...</**front**>  
  <**body**>  
   <**div**> ...  
   </**div**>  
  </**body**>  
  <**back**>...  
  </**back**>  
 </**text**>  
</**TEI**>

Le texte est structuré au maximum en cinq composantes ; deux sont obligatoires et trois optionnelles :

UNKNOWN ELEMENT group

**text** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

**front** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

**body** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

**back** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

L'élément <text> représente le début du texte de la source originale. Il suit immédiatement la balise indiquant la fin de l'en-tête TEI </teiHeader> et précède les éléments <front> et <body>. Par exemple :

<**text**>  
 <**front**>...  
 </**front**>  
 <**body**>...  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

L'élément <front> contient tous les éléments qui précèdent le corps du texte au sens strict. Imbriquée dans l'élément <front>, la page de titre nécessite l'élément <titlePage> ; elle peut être suivie de pièces liminaires comme un privilège, une dédicace, une préface, des textes d'autres auteurs, etc. Tous ces éléments sont compris dans l'élément <front>.

<**text**>  
 <**front**>  
  <**titlePage**>  
   <**docTitle**>  
    <**titlePart**> ... </**titlePart**>  
   </**docTitle**>  
   <**docImprint**> ...  
   </**docImprint**>  
  </**titlePage**>  
 </**front**>  
</**text**>

La page de titre reprend tous les éléments de la page de titre de l'œuvre originale comme le titre, l'auteur, l'adresse typographique, la date, etc. Nous reprendrons en détail ces éléments dans la quatrième partie du manuel.

L'élément <body> est utilisé pour marquer le contenu de l'œuvre dans sa globalité.

Enfin, l'élément <back> contient toutes sortes d'annexes qui suivent le corps du texte. Par exemple, il est utilisé pour les corrections ajoutées par l'imprimeur ou encore pour le colophon quand il est imprimé en fin d'ouvrage.

# Texte de l'œuvre

## Introduction

L'élément <text> englobe l'ensemble du texte. Il peut y en avoir plusieurs dans le cas d'un recueil. Le texte dans son ensemble est composé au maximum de quatre parties :

**front** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

UNKNOWN ELEMENT group

**body** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

**back** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Au début du manuel, nous avons exposé une structure simple, à laquelle nous ajoutons l'élément <back> :

<**text**>  
 <**front**>...  
 </**front**>  
 <**body**>...  
 </**body**>  
 <**back**>...  
 </**back**>  
</**text**>

## Page de titre et pièces liminaires

L'élément <front> contient tous les éléments qui précèdent le texte : la page de titre et les pièces liminaires d'un texte. Un exemple complexe nous est donné par la page de titre des *Discours non plus mélancoliques* qui est encodée ainsi :

<**front**>  
 <**titlePage**>  
  <**figure**>  
   <**graphic** **url**="http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/B861946101\_DP1139/B861946101\_DP1139.jpg"/>  
   <**figDesc**>Bibliothèques Virtuelles Humanistes - Médiathèque de Poitiers</**figDesc**>  
  </**figure**>  
  <**docTitle**>  
   <**titlePart**>Discours non plus  
   <**lb**/>  
    <**hi** **rend**="sc">MELANCOLIQUES QUE DIVERS,</**hi**>  
    <**lb**/>de choses mesmement qui appartiennent  
   <**lb**/>a notre <**placeName**>France</**placeName**>: &amp; a la fin La maniere de  
   <**lb**/>bien &amp; justement entoucher les Lucs &amp;  
   <**lb**/>Guiternes.  
   </**titlePart**>  
  </**docTitle**>  
  <**docImprint**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**lb**/>A <**placeName**>POITIERS</**placeName**>  
   <**lb**/>De l'imprimerie d'<**persName**>Enguilbert de Marnef</**persName**>.  
  <**lb**/>  
   <**docDate**>1556</**docDate**>  
  </**docImprint**>  
  <**imprimatur**>Avec privilege du Roy.</**imprimatur**>  
 </**titlePage**>  
 <**div** **type**="privilege">  
  <**p**>...</**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**front**>

Nous y distinguons les éléments suivants :

**titlePage** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

**docTitle** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

**titlePart** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

**docImprint** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

**docDate** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.

**imprimatur** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

Le privilège du roi est une pièce liminaire de l'œuvre ; il est encodé grâce à l'élément <div> dans lequel est ajouté le type « privilege ».

La partie graphique sera présentée ultérieurement à la partie "Images, langues et références" du chapitre "Balisages".

Les pages de titre intermédiaires ne nécessitent pas l'élément <titlePage> qui caractérise la page de titre du livre, mais sont marquées uniquement avec l'élément <docTitle> puis <titlePart>.

# Balisages

## Introduction

L'encodage se distingue de l'affichage en HTML qui n'est pas pris en charge par XML/TEI, mais par une feuille de style.

Le projet BVH repose sur le respect patrimonial des sources, qu'elles soient littéraires ou historiques. Il peut être important de préserver les changements de caractères et les alternances typogra­phiques, et de spécifier l'emplacement des illustrations. De même, le marquage typographique a un sens qui favorise l'analyse historique et l'interprétation des sources. Le respect de la typographie donne par ailleurs une meilleure concordance avec les images numériques des livres imprimés (les fac-similés, selon la terminologie TEI) et améliore la lisibilité du texte. Le projet BVH ne prévoit pas la restitution diplomatique intégrale de la source.

## Balisage physique

Le balisage physique rend compte de la mise en page du document original. Dans le cadre d'Epistemon, les sources sont principalement des imprimés. Du point de vue du document, ces imprimés contiennent des pages délimitées par des sauts de page. Ces pages se décomposent en lignes délimitées par des sauts de ligne et peuvent contenir des éléments de mise en page. Certaines parties du texte peuvent être mises en évidence typographiquement (gras, italique, petite capitale, etc.)

### Retour à la ligne <lb> pour linebreak

**lb/** (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

Comme le contenu de l'élément est vide, il est raccourci ainsi :

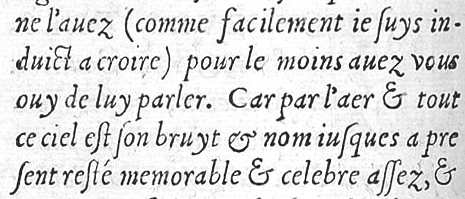
<**lb**/>

Si l'on veut numéroter les lignes, on ajoute l'attribut *@n*.

### Coupure de mots en fin de ligne

Pour indiquer une coupure de mots en fin de ligne et afin de répondre au besoin des requêtes sur des mots entiers, on pourra ajouter *@rend*="hyphen" à l'élément <lb/> marquant le saut de ligne.

Pour cet exemple :



On pourra encoder ainsi :

<**lb**/>ne l'avez (comme facilement je suys in-  
<**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>duict a croire) pour le moins avez vous  
<**lb**/>ouy de luy parler. Car par l'aer &amp; tout  
<**lb**/>ce ciel est son bruyt &amp; nom jusques a pre  
<**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>sent resté memorable &amp; celebre assez, &amp;

Le même traitement pourra être effectué pour les mots coupés en fin de page.

### Saut de page <pb> pour pagebreak

La limite entre une page et la suivante est encodée grâce à l'élément <pb/>. Tout comme le linebreak, il peut comprendre l'attribut *@n* afin de numéroter les pages. Par exemple :

<**pb** **n**="10"/>

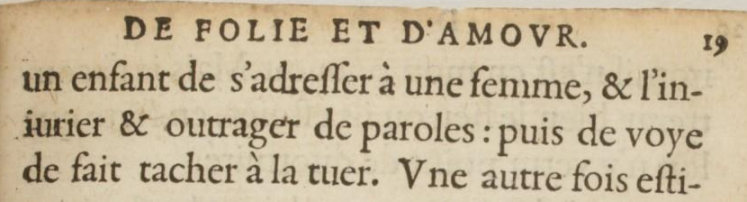
Cet élément est essentiel pour le lien avec l'image des pages du livre numérisé. Le lien vers l'image pourra être indiqué au moyen de l'attribut *@facs*.

Remarque

* Ne pas oublier que la première page doit être aussi numérotée ;
* Le numéro n'est pas obligatoirement identique à celui qui figure sur la page du livre ; il est encodé grâce à l'élément <fw> (voir paragraphe suivant) ;
* Si la page du texte pointe vers son image en fac-similé, l'élément <pb/> est indispensable.

### En-tête et pied de page : <fw> pour Forme Work

Il est utile de signaler les titres courants qui sont sur la même ligne que les numéros de page, et les pieds de page. L'élément <fw> pour forme work sert dans les deux cas.



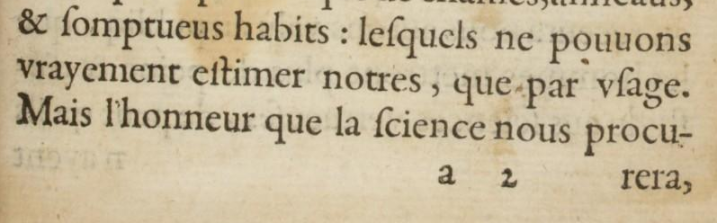
Pour le titre courant, cet élément précise le rendu typographique, sa place dans la page et son type grâce aux attributs *@place* et *@type*. Dans l'exemple, le titre courant et le numéro de page seront encodés ainsi :

<**fw** **place**="top-center" **type**="head">DE FOLIE ET D'AMOUR.</**fw**>  
<**fw** **place**="top-right" **type**="pageNum">19</**fw**>

Les valeurs des attributs sont :

* *@place* : top pour le haut de page et bot (pour bottom) pour le bas de page, et center, left ou right pour le centre, la gauche ou la droite de la page,
* *@type* : head pour le titre courant, pageNum pour le numéro de la page ou du feuillet.

Pour le pied de page, l'élément précise la place des « signatures » et des « réclames » (au sens typographique). Prenons la page 3 du même ouvrage :



La signature et la réclame seront encodées ainsi :

<**fw** **place**="bot-center" **type**="sig">a 2</**fw**>  
<**fw** **place**="bot-right" **type**="catch">rera,</**fw**>

Les attributs utilisés sont les mêmes, seule leur valeur change :

*@type* : sig pour signature, c'est-à-dire la signature, catch pour catchword, c'est-à-dire la réclame.

Cet élément permet une structuration physique aussi fidèle que possible par rapport à la page originale, car ici la signature n'est pas au centre.

### Mise en valeur : <hi> pour highlighted

L'élément <hi> marque un mot ou une série de mots graphiquement distincts du texte environnant. Il utilise l'attribut *@rend* pour rendition qui rend l'aspect physique de la chaîne de caractères.

<**hi** **rend**="it">texte en italique</**hi**>

L'attribut reflète l'aspect visuel et ne donne aucune interprétation. Ici, l'attribut  *@rend* signale la présentation physique de la police qui peut être : italic ou it, sc pour small caps, bold (gras), mais également center. Toutes ces valeurs sont déclarées dans la feuille de style.

## Balisage logique

Le corps du texte balisé avec l'élément <body> est structuré selon le genre de texte : un recueil de poèmes n'a pas la même structure qu'une pièce de théâtre, un roman et encore moins un dictionnaire. Cependant tous ces textes ont en commun d'être souvent répartis en divisions, d'avoir des retours à la ligne, des sauts de lignes et des sauts de pages.

### Division <div> associé à l'élément <head>

L'élément <div> est une subdivision du corps du texte. Ce n'est pas un élément obligatoire. Quand il est utilisé, il peut être accompagné d'un élément optionnel <head> qui identifie la division.

**div** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**head** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

Les éléments <div> peuvent s'emboîter les uns dans les autres. Ils sont dotés d'un attribut de typologie, *@type*, pour les caractériser, ainsi que de l'attribut *@n* :

<**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapitre"/>

ce qui signifie que la division est le chapitre numéro 1.

L'élément <head> contient toute forme de titre de la division, par exemple :

<**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapitre">  
 <**head**>ARGUMENT.</**head**>  
 ...  
  
</**div**>

ce qui signifie que le texte réel est « ARGUMENT. » Cet élément est également utilisé en dehors de l'élément <div> comme nous le verrons par la suite.

### Paragraphe : <p>

L'élément <p> indique un paragraphe, segmentation très fréquente pour les textes en prose. Parfois, il n'est pas nécessaire de découper le texte en divisions lorsqu'il n'y a pas de sous-parties. Dans ce cas, après l'élément <body>, nous mettons directement l'élément <p>[[14]](#footnote-15).

C'est la feuille de style qui décide de l'affichage du paragraphe : elle peut montrer uniquement un retour à la ligne ou un paragraphe suivi d'un saut de ligne. Si un retrait de la première ligne est exigé, il devra être notifié manuellement grâce à l'attribut *@rend* et la valeur « indent » :

<**p** **rend**="indent"/>

Attention

Certains imprimés présentent des paragraphes sans retrait et ni retour à la ligne. Parfois, un auteur ou un imprimeur peut laisser un espace vide. Ces blancs qui ponctuent la page peuvent être représentés avec l'élément <space> combiné avec <p>.

### Texte théâtral : <sp> pour speech et <speaker>

Les *Euvres* de Louise Labé comprennent des discours sous forme de répliques comme dans un texte théâtral. Nous avons utilisé les éléments <sp> pour ‘speech’ et <speaker>, puis nous les avons combinés avec l'élément <ab> (unité de texte quelconque) :

**sp** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

**speaker** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

**ab** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

<**sp** **who**="#amour">  
 <**speaker**>  
  <**name** **type**="allegorie">AMOUR</**name**>  
 </**speaker**>  
 <**ab**>Qui est cette fole qui me...</**ab**>  
</**sp**>  
<**sp** **who**="#folie">  
 <**speaker**>  
  <**name** **type**="allegorie">FOLIE</**name**>  
 </**speaker**>  
 <**ab**>Tu ne m'usses pù empescher,...</**ab**>  
</**sp**>

L'élément <sp> utilise l'attribut *@who* pour différencier les locuteurs.

Les indications de mise en scène (didascalies) peuvent être encodées grâce à l'élément <stage> :

<**stage**>Folie se fait invisible, tellement, qu'Amour ne la peut assener.</**stage**>

### Prose et vers : <lg> pour linegroup et <l> pour line

Pour encoder la structure des textes poétiques, deux éléments ont été utilisés. Dans les élégies et les sonnets, l'élément <lg> pour linegroup contient un groupe de lignes de vers, la strophe, et <l> ou ‘line’ une seule ligne. L'élément <p> est alors inutile.

**lg** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

**l** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<**lg** **n**="2">  
 <**l**>PAR TOY, AMI, TANT VESQUI ENFLAMMEE,</**l**>  
 <**l**>QU'EN LANGUISSANT PAR FEU SUIS CONSUMEE,</**l**>  
 <**l**>QUI COUVE ENCOR SOUS MA CENDRE EMBRAZEE,</**l**>  
 <**l**>SI NE LA RENS DE TES PLEURS APAIZEE.</**l**>  
</**lg**>

Ici l'élément <lg> utilise l'attribut *@n* pour numéroter les strophes ; l'élément <l> pourrait égale­ment utiliser cet attribut pour numéroter les lignes.

### Tête et fin de division : <head> et <trailer>

Nous avons vu l'utilisation de l'élément <head> qui suit l'élément <div> pour indiquer un sous-titre. Les exemples étant nombreux et répartis tout au long du manuel, nous ne revenons pas sur la spécificité de cet élément souvent imbriqué dans un autre élément.

À la fin d'une division, il apparaît parfois une mention explicite de fin. L'élément <trailer> en contient la formule :

<**trailer** **rend**="center">  
 <**lb**/>FIN DES EUVRES DE <**name**>LOUÏZE  
 <**lb**/>LABE'</**name**> LIONNOIZE.  
  
</**trailer**>

### Listes, tables et tableaux : <list>, <cb> et <table>

**list** contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

**item** contains one component of a list.

* L'élément <list> est utilisé pour marquer toutes sortes de listes simples. L'élément <p> le précède pour indiquer un paragraphe, s'il y a lieu. Les éléments <item> séparent toutes les séquences de la liste. L'élément <head> contient l'en-tête de la liste.

Nous donnons ici deux exemples : une liste simple et une liste à deux colonnes.

<**p**>  
 <**list**>  
  <**head**>FAUTES A CORRIGER<**lb**/>en l'impression.</**head**>  
  <**item**>Page 33. lig. 7. lis plait, pour pleint</**item**>  
  <**item**>Page 67. lig. 15. lis fait, pour fay</**item**>  
  <**item**>Page 102. lig. 16. lis Tous ses voisins</**item**>  
  <**item**>Page 141. lig. 5. lis Il nous faut eores aquiter</**item**>  
 </**list**>  
</**p**>

Les listes peuvent être également marquées à l'aide de lettres ou de chiffres, ou bien avec des puces. Il s'agit alors de mettre l'attribut *@type* et la valeur correspondante : soit « ordered » pour ordonner, soit « bulleted » pour les listes marquées par des puces, soit « simple » pour des listes non marquées ou enfin « runon » pour indiquer le style en continu de la liste sans retour à la ligne.

Une table simple à deux colonnes peut être traitée comme une liste de type glossaire (ou notices de dictionnaire) ; nous utilisons alors l'élément <label> à la place du premier <item> qui contient alors soit le terme défini dans un glossaire, soit l'étiquette associée à un élément dans une liste.

* Dans le cas d'une table des matières ou d'une table complexe, on emploiera pour chaque colonne un élément <p> précédé d' un saut de colonne <cb/> :

<**cb**/>  
<**p** **rend**="columns\_center">  
 <**lb**/>En celle du costé droict de l'entree  
<**lb**/>estoit escrite ceste fameuse sentence de  
<**lb**/>  
 <**name**>Virgile</**name**>, gravee en belles lettres Latines.  
<**lb**/>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**foreign** **xml:lang**="lat">TRAHIT SUA QUEM-  
 <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>QUE VOLUPTAS.</**foreign**>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**hi** **rend**="it">C'est à dire.  
 <**lb**/>  
  <**lb**/>Chacun est tiré de sa volupté.</**hi**>  
</**p**>  
<**cb**/>  
<**p** **rend**="columns\_center">  
 <**lb**/>Et en la senestre en lettres Greques  
<**lb**/>capitales il y avoit.  
<**lb**/>  
 <**foreign** **xml:lang**="ell">ΠΑΝ ΔΕΙ ΠΟΙΕΙΝ ΚΑΤΑΤΗΝ  
 <**lb**/>ΑΥΤΟΥ ΦΥΣΥΝ.  
 <**lb**/>Pan dei poien cata tin autou  
 <**lb**/>Physin.</**foreign**>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**hi** **rend**="it">Qui signifie, il faut que chacun  
 <**lb**/>face selon sa nature.</**hi**>  
</**p**>

Si la mise en forme dans l'exemplaire est un tableau, l'élément <table> est utilisé avec d'autres éléments imbriqués pour constituer un tableau :

**row** contains one row of a table.

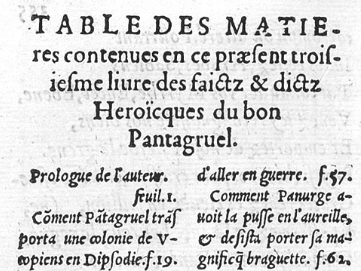
**cell** contains one cell of a table.

L'élément <row> (rangée) constitue une ligne de la table et l'élément <cell> (cellule) chaque colonne ; on peut y ajouter un élément <head> pour donner un titre au tableau. Les attributs *@rows* ou *@cols* (colonnes) indiquent le nombre de lignes ou de colonnes du tableau.

Il s'agit d'effectuer un choix éditorial entre les différents modes : liste, table ou tableau. Lorsqu'on veut respecter la présentation d'une œuvre comme dans le projet BVH, le choix sera dicté par la représentation la plus fidèle à l'original.

#### Table des matières

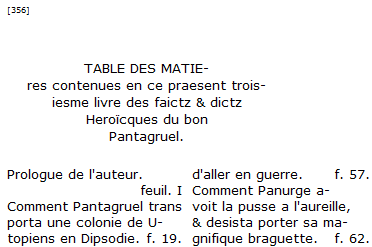
Une table des matières a une spécificité : l'alignement à droite du numéro de page, comme dans le Tiers livre de 1546.



Voici l'encodage qui en résulte :

<**div** **type**="sommaire">  
 <**fw** **place**="top-left" **type**="pageNum">[356]</**fw**>  
 <**head** **rend**="center">  
  <**lb**/>TABLE DES MATIE-  
 <**lb**/>  
  <**hi** **rend**="it">res contenues en ce praesent trois-  
  <**lb**/>iesme livre des faictz &amp; dictz  
  <**lb**/>Heroïcques du bon  
  <**lb**/>  
   <**name**>Pantagruel</**name**>.</**hi**>  
 </**head**>  
 <**lb**/>  
 <**cb**/>  
 <**p** **rend**="columns\_small">  
  <**lb**/>Prologue de l'auteur.  
 <**lb**/>  
  <**abbr**>feuil.</**abbr**> I  
 <**lb**/>Comment <**name**>Pantagruel</**name**> trans  
 <**lb**/>porta une colonie de U-  
 <**lb**/>topiens en <**geogName**>Dipsodie</**geogName**>. <**abbr**>f.</**abbr**> 19.  
   ...  
 </**p**>  
 <**cb**/>  
 <**p** **rend**="columns\_small">  
  <**lb**/>d'aller en guerre. <**abbr**>f.</**abbr**> 57.  
 <**lb**/> Comment <**name**>Panurge</**name**> a-  
 <**lb**/>voit la pusse a l'aureille,  
 <**lb**/>&amp; desista porter sa ma-  
 <**lb**/>gnifique braguette. <**abbr**>f.</**abbr**> 62.  
   ...  
 </**p**>  
</**div**>

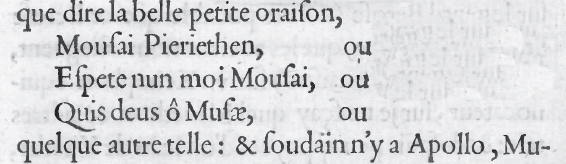
Et voici le résultat qui s'affiche :



Il reste à mettre le texte en italiques et les retraits de numéro de page pour que le résultat soit approchant de l'original. On pourra en complément encoder les numéros de page avec l'élément <ref> pour pointer vers la page correspondante grâce à l'attribut *@target*. Il doit être déclaré dans la feuille de style.

#### Discours non plus mélancoliques que divers

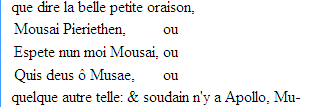
Prenons un exemple tiré du chapitre 1 des Discours, qui contient un tableau simple à deux colonnes :



La présentation en tableau à deux colonnes a été préférée à une liste de type « glossaire », car la première colonne ne correspond ni à une étiquette ni à un label mais à du texte, ce qui donne le résultat suivant :

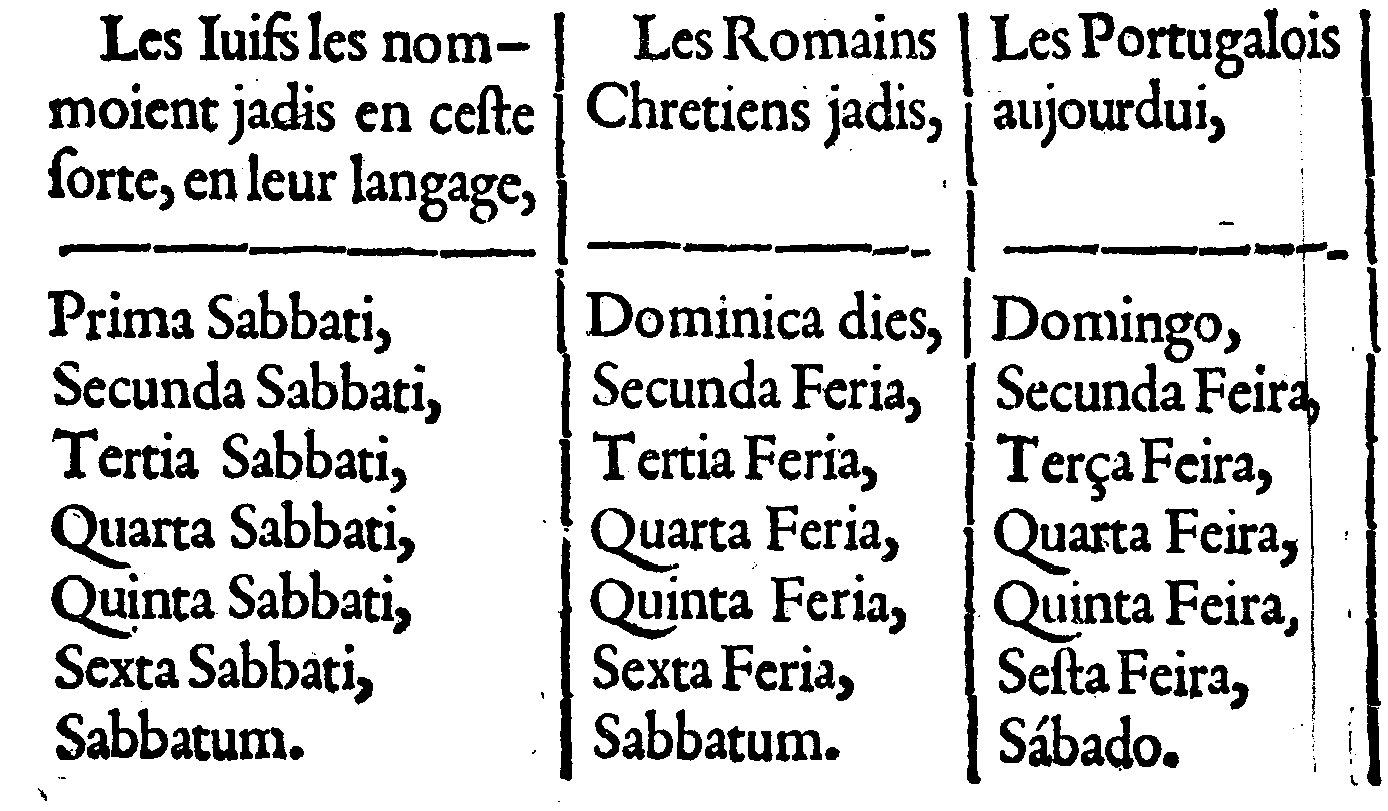
<**table**>  
 <**row** **cols**="2">  
  <**cell**>Mousai Pieriethen,</**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**space** **quantity**="0.5" **unit**="cm"/>ou</**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
 <**row**>  
  <**cell**>Espete nun moi Mousai,</**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**space** **quantity**="0.5" **unit**="cm"/>ou</**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
 <**row**>  
  <**cell**>Quis deus ô Musae,</**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**space** **quantity**="0.5" **unit**="cm"/>ou</**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
</**table**>

Le résultat à l'écran est approchant de l'original, à savoir :



#### Dépliant inséré page 9 des Discours non plus mélancoliques que divers

Un tableau imprimé se trouve sur le dépliant inséré page 9 du même livre ; il comporte huit colonnes. Nous en présentons les trois premières :

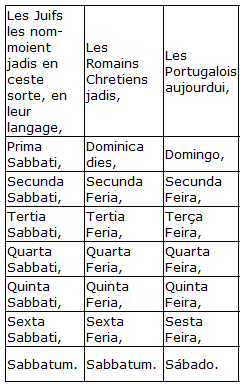


Dans cet exemple plus complexe, nous avons disposé verticalement les éléments <cell> par commodité. L'attribut *@role* a été ajouté dans l'élément <row> : la valeur « label » est suggérée pour des étiquettes – ici les peuples – et la valeur « data » pour les données proprement dites :

<**table** **rows**="8" **cols**="9">  
 <**row** **role**="label">  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Les Juifs les nom-  
  <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>moient jadis en ceste  
  <**lb**/>sorte, en leur langage,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Les Romains  
  <**lb**/>Chretiens jadis,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Les Portugalois  
  <**lb**/>aujourdui,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Les Castil-  
  <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>lans aujour-  
  <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>dui,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Les Gaulois  
  <**lb**/>&amp; François  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Italiens,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Alemans,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Bretons,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Basques,  
  </**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
 <**row** **role**="data">  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="heb">Prima Sabbati</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="lat">Dominica dies</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="por">Domingo</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="spa">Domingo</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Dimanche,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="ita">Domenica</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="deu">Sondach</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="bre">Dei Suul</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="eus">Igándea</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
 <**row** **role**="data">  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="heb">Secunda Sabbati</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="lat">Secunda Feria</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="por">Secunda Feira</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="spa">Lunes</**foreign**>  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>Lundi,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="ita">Lunedi</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="deu">Maendach</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="bre">Dei luun</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
  <**cell**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**foreign** **xml:lang**="eus">Astelechéna</**foreign**>,  
  </**cell**>  
   ...  
 </**row**>  
</**table**>

Il est bien entendu possible d'ajouter toutes sortes d'attributs dans les éléments des tableaux comme l'attribut *@rend*.

Le résultat est proche de la page originale :



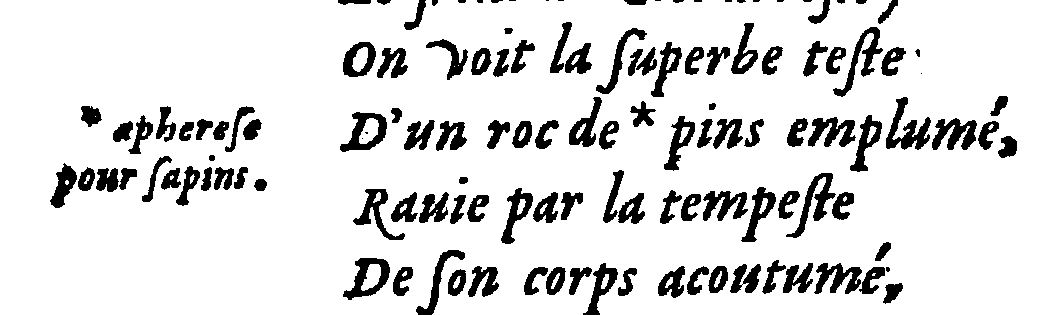
## Les interventions éditoriales

Les interventions éditoriales sont de deux types : celles que nous signalons, parce qu'elles figurent dans le texte imprimé, comme les abréviations ; celles que nous ajoutons pour une meilleure compréhension du texte ou de la transcription, qui sont des annotations.

### Annotations imprimées : <note>

**note** contains a note or annotation.

L'élément <note> est utilisé pour indiquer une note située dans la marge qu'elle soit ou non signalée par un appel de note. Dans les *Euvres* de Louise Labé, une note imprimée figure en marge :



Nous proposons l'encodage suivant, au moyen de l'attribut *@place* et ses valeurs margin-left et margin-right :

<**lg** **rend**="it">...  
<**l**>On voit la superbe teste</**l**>  
 <**l**>D'un roc de\*  
 <**note** **place**="margin-left">\* aphrese  
  <**lb**/>pour sapins.</**note**>   
   pins emplumé,</**l**>  
 <**l**>Ravie par la tempeste</**l**>  
 <**l**>De son corps acoutumé,</**l**>  
 ...  
</**lg**>

Il est possible de dresser une typologie de ces annotations qui sont souvent des explications, des sous-titres, des entrées d'index, grâce à l'attribut *@type*.

### Abréviations : <abbr>, <orig>

**choice** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

**abbr** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

**expan** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

**orig** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

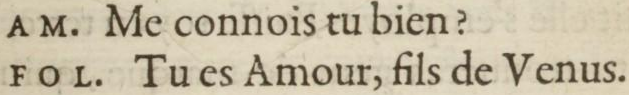
**reg** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Les abréviations du texte sont de deux types : d'une part, sous la forme d'une suppression de lettres (« F. » pour « François ») et, d'autre part, sous la forme d'un « brévigraphe » qui symbolise la réduction d'un mot comme dans « congé » abrégé en cōgé.

Dans le projet BVH, les mots abrégés de type brévigraphe, très fréquents à la Renaissance, sont développés et généralement encodés avec les balises <choice>, <orig> et <reg> :

qu'il  
<**choice**>  
 <**orig**>cōposera</**orig**>  
 <**reg**>composera</**reg**>  
</**choice**>   
 &amp; fera par cy apres.

L'autre type d'abréviation concerne les suppressions de lettres comme dans les *Euvres* de Louise Labé où les noms des locuteurs « Amour » et « Folie » sont abrégés en « AM. » et « FOL. » :



Ce second type d'abréviation est encodé avec <abbr> et peut faire l'objet d'un développement grâce à l'élément <expan> :

<**choice**>  
 <**abbr**>AM.</**abbr**>  
 <**expan**>AMOUR</**expan**>  
</**choice**>

### État de l'œuvre : <unclear>, <del>, <gap>, <supplied> et <add>

**unclear** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

**del** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

**gap** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

**supplied** signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason, typically because the original cannot be read because of physical damage or loss to the original.

**add** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

Des fragments de texte peuvent avoir été ôtés, effacés ou ajoutés par accident ou volontairement par des mains différentes : imprimeur, lecteur, etc. Cinq éléments peuvent être combinés pour signaler ces problèmes de lecture et d'intervention.

* L'élément <unclear> est rarement utilisé dans les livres imprimés. Cependant, quelques taches et des caractères usés peuvent être marqués ainsi. L'attribut *@reason* en indique la raison. Prenons un exemple dans le *Tiers Livre* de 1546 :

<**p**>...la tierce partie du monde,  
<**unclear** **reason**="damage">bestes</**unclear**>  
 <**lb**/>...  
</**p**>

* Le second élément est <del> pour deletion. Dans les *Discours*, une lettre a été barrée :



Quand le nom du responsable est connu, l'attribut *@hand* peut être utilisé pour l'identifier. Dans le cas des *Discours*, il s'agit probablement de l'éditeur Enguilbert de Marnef (selon Marie-Luce Demonet).

Cette intervention est encodée ainsi :

<**p**>...ne se cr<**del** **hand**="#editeur" **resp**="#MLD">o</**del**>ient immortelz...</**p**>

* L'élément <gap> concerne des passages qui peuvent être absents pour des raisons matérielles ou éditoriales, et que l'on renonce à restituer. Il peut être accompagné de l'élément <desc> pour description qui autorise l'insertion d'autres éléments.

<**gap** **reason**="grec">  
 <**desc**>  
  <**bibl**>  
   <**title**>ODE GRECQUE</**title**>, attribuée à <**author**>Jacques Peletier du Mans</**author**>,  
  <**author**>Jean-Antoine de Baïf</**author**>, <**author**>Antoine du Moulin</**author**> ou <**author**>Henri Estienne</**author**>  
  </**bibl**>  
 </**desc**>  
</**gap**>

Quand il est vide de contenu, il peut être raccourci ainsi :

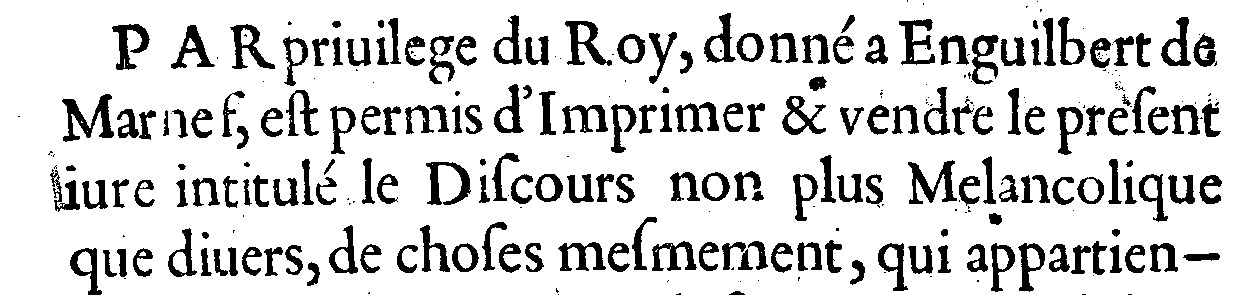
<**gap** **reason**="illegible"/>

Cet élément peut également être utilisé à la place de l'élément <unclear> quand une partie du texte à transcrire est complètement illisible ; l'attribut *@reason* y est spécifié également.

Un quatrième élément, <supplied>, est utilisé pour compléter <gap> ou <unclear>. Il marque le texte restitué et sa source grâce à l'attribut *@source* qui indique l'édition ou l'exemplaire qui a permis la restitution, référence préalablement définie dans le Header. C'est ainsi que pour l'encodage du *Courtisan* de Baldassare Castiglione de 1538, nous avons consulté une édition de 1537 :

<**teiHeader**>...  
<**normalization**>  
  <**p**>Cette transcription suit l'édition de 1538, d'après l'exemplaire du CESR (SR10B).  
  <**lb**/>Pour la correction du texte de 1538, nous avons consulté  
  <**bibl** **xml:id**="ed1537"  
    **xml:base**="http://gallica2.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k49708n.r">  
    <**title**>Les Quatre livres du Courtisan, </**title**>  
    <**editor**>[trad. Jacques Colin]</**editor**>, <**pubPlace**>[Lyon]</**pubPlace**>,  
   <**editor**>[Denys de Harsy]</**editor**>, <**date**>[1537]</**date**>,  
   </**bibl**>  
     et  
  <**bibl** **xml:id**="ed1585"  
    **xml:base**="http://gallica2.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k754790.r">  
    <**title**>Le Parfait courtisan...</**title**>, <**editor**>trad. Gabriel Chapuis</**editor**>,  
   <**pubPlace**>Paris</**pubPlace**>, <**editor**>Nicolas Bonfons</**editor**>, <**date**>1585</**date**>  
   </**bibl**>  
  </**p**>  
 </**normalization**>  
 ...  
</**teiHeader**>  
<**text**>...  
<**supplied** **source**="#ed1537">labhorrist</**supplied**>  
 ...  
</**text**>

* L'élément <add> permet d'ajouter un caractère ou un texte non imprimé dans l'ouvrage ; parmi les attributs possibles, retenons *@hand* et *@place*. Dans le privilège du roi des *Discours non plus mélancoliques*, un exemple nous est donné avec cette correction d'époque en troisième ligne :



* Nous proposons l'encodage suivant pour représenter le « l » de « livre » ajouté à la main :

<**p**>  
 <**lb**/>PAR privilege du Roy, donné a <**persName**>Enguilbert de  
 <**lb**/>Marnef</**persName**>, est permis d'Imprimer &amp; vendre le present  
<**lb**/>  
 <**choice**>  
  <**sic**>ivre</**sic**>  
  <**corr** **resp**="editeur">livre</**corr**>  
 </**choice**> intitulé le Discours non plus Melancolique  
<**lb**/>que divers, de choses mesmement, qui appartien-  
<**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>nent a nostre <**placeName**>France</**placeName**>: &amp; a la fin La maniere de bien  
<**lb**/>&amp; justement entoucher les Lucs &amp; Guiternes. &amp;  
 ...  
  
</**p**>

Dans cet exemple, l'ajout semble avoir été effectué par l'éditeur, ici Enguilbert de Marnef.

Quand il s'agit d'ajouts de mains anonymes, nous les encodons sous la forme suivante :

<**add** **place**="margin-left" **hand**="anonyme">...</**add**>

La feuille de style définit l'emplacement de l'appel de note, qu'il soit à gauche ou à droite.

### Erreurs et régularisations : <sic> et <corr>, <orig> et <reg>

**choice** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

**sic** (Latin for thus or so ) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

**corr** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

**orig** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

**reg** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

D'autres interventions éditoriales concernent les corrections et les régularisations, base de tout travail d'édition. Elles utilisent les quatre éléments liés deux à deux, à savoir : <sic> et <corr> pour correction , <orig> pour original form et <reg> pour regularization.

* L'élément <sic> contient le texte original bien qu'il apparaisse incorrect ou inexact. Les erreurs manifestes peuvent être une erreur de pagination ou une inversion de lettres. Dans la *Deffence, et illustration de la Langue francoyse* de Du Bellay, on lit :

... que la Nature a <**sic**>crées</**sic**>...

Ici, la correction n'est pas nécessaire, car cette graphie est fréquente. En revanche, les erreurs manifestes peuvent concerner la pagination ou une inversion de lettres. Pour les corriger, nous pouvons utiliser l'élément <corr>.

L'élément <sic> peut s'employer indépendamment de l'élément <corr>. Si ce dernier est utilisé, le choix éditorial est de privilégier la forme correcte du mot par défaut.

* L'élément <corr> contient la forme correcte d'un mot rectifié par nous. Dans La *Deffence* encore (p. 37 recto), « Et tout ainsi qu'entres les Aucteurs » est corrigé ainsi :

<**p**>...  
 Et tout ainsi qu'  
<**choice**>  
  <**sic**>entres</**sic**>  
  <**corr**>entre</**corr**>  
   les Aucteurs...  
 </**choice**>  
</**p**>

Si la correction est apportée grâce à une autre édition, l'attribut *@source* peut être ajouté. C'est le cas dans le *Tiers Livre* de 1546 :

<**corr** **source**="#ed1552">ne</**corr**>

Enfin, certaines interventions éditoriales concernent les régularisations. Un mot (ou une expression) peut être régularisé avec les éléments <orig> et <reg> :



* L'élément <orig> contient la forme originale de la source, ici le titre de l'ouvrage et le nom de l'auteur :

<**front**>  
 <**titlePage**>  
  <**docTitle**>  
   <**titlePart**>  
    <**orig**>EVVRES</**orig**>  
   </**titlePart**>  
  </**docTitle**>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**byline**>DE  
  <**lb**/>  
   <**name**>  
    <**orig**>LOVÏZE LABE'</**orig**>  
   </**name**>  
   <**lb**/>LIONNOIZE.  
  </**byline**>  
 </**titlePage**>  
</**front**>

* L'élément <reg> contient la forme régularisée[[15]](#footnote-16).

<**front**>  
 <**titlePage**>  
  <**docTitle**>  
   <**titlePart**>  
    <**reg**>EUVRES</**reg**>  
   </**titlePart**>  
  </**docTitle**>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**byline**>DE  
  <**lb**/>  
   <**name**>  
    <**reg**>LOUISE LABÉ</**reg**>  
   </**name**>  
   <**lb**/>LIONNOIZE.  
  </**byline**>  
 </**titlePage**>  
</**front**>

Pour afficher le texte, des choix éditoriaux sont nécessaires pour les éléments concernant les erreurs, les régularisations mais également les abréviations : nous utilisons alors l'élément <choice>. Reprenons les exemples précédents auxquels nous appliquons ce nouvel élément :

**choice** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

**orig** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

**reg** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

<**front**>  
 <**titlePage**>  
  <**docTitle**>  
   <**titlePart**>  
    <**choice**>  
     <**orig**>EVVRES</**orig**>  
     <**reg**>EUVRES</**reg**>  
    </**choice**>  
   </**titlePart**>  
  </**docTitle**>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**lb**/>  
  <**byline**>DE  
  <**lb**/>  
   <**name**>  
    <**choice**>  
     <**orig**>LOVÏZE LABE'</**orig**>  
     <**reg**>LOUISE LABÉ</**reg**>  
    </**choice**>  
   </**name**>  
   <**lb**/>LIONNOIZE.</**byline**>  
 </**titlePage**>  
</**front**>

Selon le choix éditorial, on affichera soit la version originale, « EVVRES », soit la version régularisée, « EUVRES », ou bien on laissera à l'utilisateur la possibilité de passer d'un état à l'autre.

**choice** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

**sic** (Latin for thus or so ) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

**corr** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

<**p**>...  
 Et tout ainsi qu'  
<**choice**>  
  <**sic**>entres</**sic**>  
  <**corr**>entre</**corr**>  
 </**choice**>   
 les Aucteurs  
 ...  
</**p**>

**choice** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

**abbr** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

**expan** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

<**choice**>  
 <**abbr**>AM.</**abbr**>  
 <**expan**>AMOUR</**expan**>  
</**choice**>

Enfin, ces éléments peuvent se combiner entre eux. Par exemple, dans le *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais, une main anonyme a rectifié l'erreur évidente de numérotation du chapitre 38 :



Nous proposons l'encodage suivant :

Chapitre <**del**>  
 <**sic**>XXXIII.</**sic**>  
</**del**>  
<**add** **hand**="lecteur" **place**="online">xxxviij.</**add**>

L'attribut *@place* est ajouté pour spécifier l'emplacement de l'ajout dans le texte.

## Balisage onomastique

Ce type de balisage permet de mettre en évidence les noms propres et des éléments temporels comme les dates. Des expressions ou des suites de mots peuvent également faire l'objet d'un marquage permettant de dresser une typologie en vue d'analyses ultérieures.

### L'onomastique : noms de personnes, dénomination sociale et toponymes

**name** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

L'élément <name> est générique ; nous l'utilisons pour les noms de personnes, qu'ils soient réels ou fictifs ; par exemple la déesse Minerve sera marquée ainsi :

<**name**>Minerve</**name**>

À noter qu'on peut aussi typer les éléments, avec *@type*, si cela s'avère utile dans le cadre d'un projet :

<**name** **type**="mythologie">Minerve</**name**>

**persName** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.

L'élément <persName> pour personal name est plus précis que <name> car il permet une dénomination plus détaillée. Le nom de « maistre François de Connan, maistre des Requestes de l'hostel » peut être marqué par l'élément <name> ou être précisé grâce à ce nouvel élément :

<**persName**>  
 <**forename**>François</**forename**> de <**surname**>Connan</**surname**>, maistre des Requestes de l'hostel  
  
</**persName**>

Voici les éléments qui peuvent être utilisés dans <persName> :

UNKNOWN ELEMENT foreName

**surname** contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.

**genName** (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named.

**roleName** contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank.

**addName** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name.

**nameLink** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of.

Si cela s'avère utile dans le cadre du projet, on pourra compléter l'encodage ainsi:

<**persName**>  
 <**foreName**>François</**foreName**>  
 <**nameLink**>de</**nameLink**>  
 <**surName**>Connan</**surName**>,  
<**roleName**>maistre des Requestes de l'hostel</**roleName**>  
</**persName**>

Parmi les attributs, notons les plus utilisés comme *@type* et *@xml:id* que nous connaissons déjà, et l'attribut *@ref* pour reference qui peut indiquer un lien vers une notice, soit localement, soit dans un fichier externe grâce à un identifiant. Par exemple :

<**name** **ref**=".../personnes.xml#FR">François Rabelais</**name**>

qui renvoie à la notice sur François Rabelais dans un fichier externalisé « personnes.xml ».

Le choix éditorial se pose ici : encoder le plus simplement possible les noms ou effectuer une première analyse et marquer d'une manière plus élaborée les noms de personnes[[16]](#footnote-17).

**placeName** contains an absolute or relative place name.

**geogName** (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai.

<placeName> correspond à la désignation des lieux absolus ou relatifs (village, ville, pays, région...).

<**placeName** **type**="ville">Lion</**placeName**>

<**placeName** **type**="ville">Angleterre</**placeName**>

<**placeName**>Savoie</**placeName**>

Certains attributs sont spécifiques à cet élément: *@notBefore* et *@notAfter* dont la valeur est la date à partir de laquelle ou jusqu'à laquelle le nom de ce toponyme est utilisé.

<geogName>concerne tout nom associé à une particularité géographique (lac, mont, etc).

<**geogName**>Mont Sion</**geogName**>

Il est bien entendu possible d'utiliser l'attribut *@type* pour dresser une typologie.

Complément

Il est même possible de dresser des cartes grâce aux éléments <location> et <geo> imbriqués dans l'élément <place>. Les coordonnées, longitude et latitude, sont indiquées dans l'élément <geo> [[17]](#footnote-18).

### La datation calendaire : <date>

**date** contains a date in any format.

L'élément <date> contient une date dans n'importe quel format. Quatre attributs permettent d'en préciser la valeur.

L'attribut *@when* donne la valeur de la date sous la forme standard suivante : aaaa, voire aaaa-mm-jj. Par exemple :

<**date** **when**="1556-05-13"/>

Au XVIe siècle, il est fréquent que la date précise ne soit pas connue. Nous utilisons alors les attributs *@notBefore* et *@notAfter* :

<**date** **notBefore**="1500" **notAfter**="1543">1500-1543</**date**>

Un quatrième attribut, *@cert*, précise le degré de certitude de la date indiquée ; il peut avoir comme valeur high, medium, low ou unknown :

<**date** **cert**="low">1543</**date**>

L'attribut *@calendar* n'est pas utilisé mais il serait utile pour signifier à quel système (julien, grégorien ou autre) la date se rattache, notamment pour indiquer les dates antérieures à la réforme du calendrier : l'édit de 1564 fait commencer l'année au 1er janvier (auparavant entre janvier et Pâques). Nous donnons un exemple imaginaire :

<**date** **when**="1531-02-02" **calendar**="julian">deux febvrier 1530</**date**>

Le choix éditorial est de simplifier le marquage du temps et de n'utiliser en général que l'élément <date> avec *@when* voire *@cert*.

## Images, langues et références

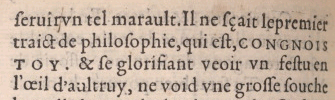
### Les citations et références bibliographiques

**quote** (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

**cit** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

**bibl** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

Dans le *Tiers Livre*, on dénombre une multitude de citations qui ne sont pas forcément délimitées par des guillemets ni facilement identifiables :



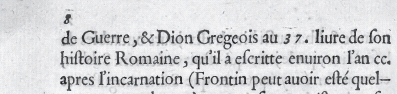
Nous envisageons de les encoder : c'est un choix éditorial. Dans cet exemple, nous encodons l'expression « Congnois toy » grâce à l'élément <quote> qui marque un passage ou une expression attribués à un agent extérieur au texte :

<**lb**/>servir un tel marault. Il ne sçait le premier  
<**lb**/>traict de philosophie, qui est, <**quote**>CONGNOIS  
<**lb**/>TOY</**quote**>. &amp; se glorifiant veoir un festu en...

Quand l'expression devient une citation littérale, nous utilisons l'élément <quote> imbriqué dans l'élément <cit> pour citation. À la page 37 des *Discours*, une citation pourrait être encodée avec trois éléments imbriqués : <cit>, <quote> et <l> pour chaque ligne de vers.

<**cit**>  
 <**quote**>  
  <**l**>Ainsi s'en va chatoulheus de la gorge</**l**>  
  <**l**>Ledit valet, monté comme un saint George.</**l**>  
 </**quote**>  
</**cit**>

Par ailleurs, dans certains textes, apparaissent des références bibliographiques plus ou moins précises :



Nous utilisons les trois éléments suivants : <bibl> pour bibliographic citation, <author> et <title>, les deux derniers étant imbriqués dans le premier :

<**lb**/>de Guerre, &amp; <**bibl**>  
 <**author**>Dion Gregeois</**author**> au <**hi** **rend**="italic">37.</**hi**>livre de son  
<**lb**/>  
 <**title**>histoire Romaine</**title**>  
</**bibl**>, qu'il a escritte environ l'<**date** **when**="0200">an cc</**date**>.  
<**lb**/>apres l'incarnation (Frontin peut avoir esté quel-

L'élément <bibl> marque les références bibliographiques ici peu structurées. Dans notre exemple, seuls l'auteur et le titre sont cités[[18]](#footnote-19).

Nous combinons les citations avec les références bibliographiques quand une mention d'un autre ouvrage est donnée avec ses références :

La citation qui apparaît littéralement est marquée grâce aux deux éléments complémentaires <quote> et <bibl>.

<**lb**/>niere de sort ce vers escript, AEneid. 6.  
  
<**cit**>  
 <**quote**>  
  <**l** **xml:lang**="lat">  
   <**hi** **rend**="it">Tu regere imperio populos Romane me-  
   <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>  
    <**space** **quantity**="2" **unit**="mm"/>mento</**hi**>.</**l**>  
 </**quote**>  
 <**quote**>  
  <**l**>Romain enfant quand viendras a l'Em-  
  <**lb** **rend**="hyphen"/>  
   <**space** **quantity**="2" **unit**="mm"/>pire,</**l**>  
  <**l**>Regiz le monde en sorte qu'il n'empire.</**l**>  
 </**quote**>  
</**cit**>

Dans tous les cas, l'attribut qui est privilégié pour les éléments <cit> et <quote> est *@type*.

Dans certains passages, des paroles ou des pensées peuvent être mises en évidence. L'élément <said> est alors retenu. Dans les *Discours*, la page 38 en est un exemple :

<**p**>...  
<**said**>He, maistre  
 <**lb**/>mon ami,</**said**> dit il,...  
</**p**>

L'attribut *@who* identifie éventuellement le locuteur.

### Les langues

Les langues utilisées dans les œuvres sont déclarées dans l'en-tête TEI[[19]](#footnote-20). Dans le corps du texte, l'élément <foreign> marque le mot ou l'expression écrit dans une autre langue que celle de l'œuvre ; on y associe l'attribut *@xml:lang* et, en valeur, le code de la langue. La nomenclature des codes standards correspond à la norme ISO 639, comme ici pour le latin.

<**foreign** **xml:lang**="la">restare</**foreign**>

La norme ISO 639-3 a défini le français de la Renaissance (1400-1600) par le code "frm" (moyen français). Nous proposons de mettre cette valeur grâce à l'attribut *@xml:lang* dans l'élément <text> :

<**text** **xml:lang**="frm"/>

Par défaut le texte est en français de la Renaissance à l'exception des passages dans une autre langue signalée par l'élément <foreign>. La liste des langues et des dialectes que nous utilisons est donnée en annexe de ce manuel.

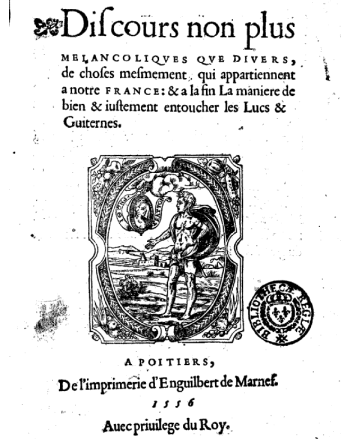
Parfois, le mot ou l'expression dans une langue autre que celle de l'œuvre est mise en italiques ; on utilise alors l'attribut *@rend* et la valeur it soit dans l'élément <foreign> soit en ajoutant l'élément <hi>. Ainsi, page 72 des *Discours*, plusieurs mots sont exprimés dans une autre langue que le français du XVIe siècle et le marquage peut se faire sous deux formes :

<**foreign** **xml:lang**="la" **rend**="it">restare</**foreign**>  
<**foreign** **xml:lang**="la">  
 <**hi** **rend**="it">restare</**hi**>  
</**foreign**>

Les deux balisages sont équivalents. Nous recommandons le second : il est plus long, mais il différencie nettement un balisage formel d'un balisage sémantique. De plus, la première solution complique le travail sur la feuille de style, le marquage formel et typographique devant être déclaré dans l'élément sémantique.

### Les images

Le choix éditorial a été de n'encoder que les illustrations liées à une banque d'images grâce à l'adresse « url ». Par exemple, la page de titre des *Discours non plus mélancoliques* contient une marque d''imprimeur :



Pour encoder la marque d'imprimeur, l'élément <graphic> est utilisé avec l'attribut *@url* dont la valeur est l'emplacement du fichier image. *@xml:base* est employé ici pour fournir un lien vers la notice de l'ouvrage. <figDesc> permet de décrire l'image en question. Ces deux éléments sont contenus dans <figure> :

<**figure**>  
 <**graphic** **url**="B861946101\_DP1139.jpg"  
  **xml:base**="http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/Consult/index.asp?numfiche=71"/>  
 <**figDesc**>Bibliothèques Virtuelles Humanistes - Médiathèque de Poitiers</**figDesc**>  
</**figure**>

L'affichage de l'image peut poser parfois des problèmes de proportion et demande un encodage ou un stylage spécifique.

L'encodage de la page de titre peut être résumé ainsi[[20]](#footnote-21) :

<**front**>  
 <**titlePage**>  
  <**figure**>  
   <**graphic** **url**="http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/B861946101\_DP1139/B861946101\_DP1139.jpg"/>  
   <**figDesc**>Bibliothèques Virtuelles Humanistes - Médiathèque de Poitiers</**figDesc**>  
  </**figure**>  
  <**docTitle**>  
   <**titlePart**>Discours...</**titlePart**>  
  </**docTitle**>  
  <**docImprint**>  
   <**lb**/>  
   <**lb**/>A <**placeName**>POITIERS</**placeName**>...  
  </**docImprint**>  
  <**imprimatur**>Avec privilege du Roy.</**imprimatur**>  
 </**titlePage**>  
 <**div** **type**="privilege">  
  <**p**>...</**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**front**>

Grâce à une connexion au serveur, l'image est récupérée. À l'affichage, le résultat est proche de la page de titre originale :



Dans le projet BVH, la typologie des données graphiques est établie à partir de l'extraction automatique. L'encodage TEI en dépend et est en cours de développement.

# En-tête TEI <teiHeader>

## Vue d'ensemble

Tout texte de format TEI est composé d'un en-tête TEI suivi du corps du texte lui-même. L'en-tête contient des informations indispensables à l'identification du fichier :

1. <fileDesc> une description bibliographique du fichier électronique regroupant le titre électronique, les responsables de l'édition et de la publication, ainsi que la description bibliographique de l'œuvre originale ;
2. <encodingDesc> le rapport entre le texte électronique et la source originale,
3. <profileDesc> une description des aspects non bibliographiques,
4. <revisionDesc> un historique des révisions du fichier électronique.

Cet en-tête doit prendre en compte l'aspect juridique lié à la propriété intellectuelle et au droit d'auteur. Il peut être réduit à quelques lignes : le titre électronique, l'éditeur électronique et une bibliographie sommaire de la source originale. Cependant, il est fortement recommandé de le compléter soit en apportant des informations sur la source originale, soit en donnant les modalités de l'édition électronique. Le plus grand nombre de renseignements est requis pour diffuser et échanger les fichiers électroniques. L'expérience a montré que plus riche est l'en-tête, plus le fichier est réutilisé.

Nous proposons un en-tête minimal qui doit avoir la structure suivante :

<**teiHeader**>  
 <**fileDesc**>  
  <**titleStmt**>  
   <**title**>...</**title**>  
  </**titleStmt**>  
  <**publicationStmt**>  
   <**authority**>...</**authority**>  
  </**publicationStmt**>  
  <**sourceDesc**>  
   <**p**>...</**p**>  
  </**sourceDesc**>  
 </**fileDesc**>  
</**teiHeader**>

Dans l'exemple des *Discours*, l'en-tête peut être réduit selon l'encodage suivant :

<**teiHeader**>  
 <**fileDesc**>  
  <**titleStmt**>  
   <**title**>Discours non plus mélancoliques que divers, attribué à Elie Vinet, Poitiers, 1556</**title**>  
  </**titleStmt**>  
  <**publicationStmt**>  
   <**authority**>Université François-Rabelais</**authority**>  
  </**publicationStmt**>  
  <**sourceDesc**>  
   <**p**>...</**p**>  
  </**sourceDesc**>  
 </**fileDesc**>  
</**teiHeader**>

## Description bibliographique du fichier : <fileDesc> file description

La description bibliographique du fichier commence par le titre électronique ainsi que l'identité des responsables de son contenu intellectuel. La source, à partir de laquelle le fichier a été généré, fait ensuite l'objet d'une description bibliographique.

L'élément <titleStmt> pour title statement contient les éléments suivants :

* <title> désigne le titre électronique de l'ouvrage décidé par l'équipe éditoriale.
* <respStmt> pour statement of responsibility donne le nom du responsable de la collection électronique, ainsi que ceux de l'encodage.

L'élément <editionStmt> pour element statement contient les éléments éditoriaux suivants :

* <edition> avec son attribut n et sa valeur, donne le numéro de la présente édition électronique (souvent le numéro « 1 ») ; on y ajoute la date, l'url du fichier en ligne ainsi que son identifiant.
* <respStmt>

L'élément <extent> donne la taille matérielle du texte ; nous l'utilisons pour indiquer le nombre de kilos octets du fichier.

L'élément <publicationStmt> pour publication statement contient les informations sur l'orga­nisme responsable de la publication.

* <authority> le nom des organismes responsables de l'œuvre électronique.
* <address> l'adresse des organismes.
* <availability> la restriction juridique de sa distribution : copyright.

L'élément <seriesStmt> pour series Statement n'a pas été encore utilisé dans le projet BVH. Il permet de regrouper les informations concernant une collection. Il pourra être ajouté s'il est envi­sagé d'encoder une collection : dictionnaires, œuvres complètes d'un auteur, minutes notariales d'une étude, etc.

L'élément <notesStmt> pour notes Statement permet d'ajouter des notes sur l'édition.

L'élément <sourceDesc> pour source description est une partie obligatoire de l'en-tête car il consigne toutes les informations sur la source originale. Il contient l'élément <msDesc>, pour manuscript description ; il concerne à l'origine la description des manuscrits mais on peut l'étendre aux imprimés anciens. L'élément <origDate> peut s'imbriquer et indiquer la date de la première version connue.

<msDesc> Contient :

* <msIdentifier> pour manuscript identifier imbriqué dans l'élément <msDesc> ; il contient les informations pour retrouver la source : lieu de conservation, identifiant et ville. Dans le cas des *Discours*, l'encodage est le suivant :

<**msIdentifier** **xml:id**="Res\_Z\_1110">  
 <**settlement**>Paris</**settlement**>  
 <**institution**>Bibliothèque nationale de France</**institution**>  
 <**repository** **key**="751131011">Réserve des livres rares</**repository**>  
 <**idno** **type**="cote">Res-Z-1110</**idno**>  
</**msIdentifier**>

L'élément <settlement> est préféré à celui de <placeName> car il s'applique à tous les cas. Le numéro de la bibliothèque issu du répertoire des centres de ressource géré par l'ABES (Agence bibliographique de l'enseignement supérieur) est spécifié dans l'élément <repository>, lieu de conservation de la source. L'élément <idno> donne le numéro de catalogage de l'œuvre au sein de la collection de la bibliothèque.

* <msContents> pour manuscript contents, décrit le contenu intellectuel d'un ouvrage. Cet élément contient <biblStruct> pour structured bibliographic citation, qui comprend d'autres éléments sur les informations bibliographiques contenues principalement dans la page de titre grâce à <monogr> pour monographic level ; ce dernier contient les éléments bibliographiques comme <title>, <author>, <imprint>, <publisher>, <date>, <pubPlace> pour publication place qui reprennent les parties de la page de titre de la source originale.

<**msContents**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**biblStruct**>  
   <**monogr**>  
    <**title**>...</**title**>  
    <**author**>...</**author**>  
    <**imprint**>  
     <**publisher**>...</**publisher**>  
     <**date**>...</**date**>  
    </**imprint**>  
   </**monogr**>  
  </**biblStruct**>  
 </**p**>  
</**msContents**>

Plusieurs problèmes se posent dans cette partie de l'en-tête TEI. Le premier concerne l'auteur quand celui-ci n'est pas formellement désigné. Par exemple, les *Discours non plus mélancoliques...* est une œuvre attribuée à Elie Vinet ; nous proposons l'encodage suivant :

<**monogr**>  
 <**title**>...</**title**>  
 <**author**>  
  <**persName** **role**="auteur\_présumé">  
   <**surname**>Vinet</**surname**>  
   <**forename**>Élie</**forename**>  
  </**persName**>  
 </**author**>  
</**monogr**>

Complément

L'emploi de <surname> et <forename> permet d'obtenir une forme normalisée pour établir un index des auteurs. Dans <persName>, l'attribut rôle permet d'établir une typologie du statut de l'auteur.

* <physDesc> pour physical description, contient la description physique de la source grâce à deux éléments principaux : <objectDesc> (collation, format) et <bindingDesc> (reliure).
* <history> , où se trouve imbriqué <provenance>, décrit d'éventuels possesseurs de l'exemplaire encodé ;
* <additional> contient <listBibl> pour ‘citation list’ (liste de citations bibliogra­phiques de la source) ainsi que <surrogates> pour citation list (liste de citation, qui permet de décrire des reproductions numériques de l'édition).

<**additional**>  
 <**adminInfo**>  
  <**recordHist**>  
   <**source**>  
    <**listBibl**>  
     <**bibl**>  
      <**author**>Vinet (E.)</**author**>,  
     <**title**>Discours non plus melancoliques que divers</**title**>,  
     <**pubPlace**>Poitiers</**pubPlace**>, <**date**>1557</**date**>,  
     <**idno** **type**="cote">DP1139</**idno**>.  
     </**bibl**>  
    </**listBibl**>  
   </**source**>  
  </**recordHist**>  
 </**adminInfo**>  
 <**surrogates**>  
  <**bibl**>  
   <**ref** **target**="http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k71448r"/>  
  </**bibl**>  
 </**surrogates**>  
</**additional**>

Voici un exemple-type de la description du fichier électronique :

<**fileDesc**>  
 <**titleStmt**>  
  <**title**>Discours non plus mélancoliques que divers, Poitiers, 1556</**title**>  
  <**respStmt**>  
   <**name** **xml:id**="MLD">Marie-Luce Demonet</**name**>  
   <**resp**>  
    <**date**>2009</**date**>Responsable BVH CESR, relecture  
   </**resp**>  
  </**respStmt**>  
 </**titleStmt**>  
 <**editionStmt**>  
  <**edition** **n**="1"  
   **xml:base**="http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr:8080/xtf/view?docId=tei/B861946101\_DP1139/B861946101\_DP1139\_tei.xml;query=;brand=default">  
   <**date** **type**="mise\_en\_ligne"  
    **when**="2010-07-20" **n**="1">20 juillet 2010</**date**>  
  </**edition**>  
  <**respStmt**>  
   <**name** **xml:id**="TU">Toshinori Uetani</**name**>  
   <**resp**>Révision</**resp**>  
  </**respStmt**>  
 </**editionStmt**>  
 <**extent**>268 Ko</**extent**>  
 <**publicationStmt**>  
  <**authority** **xml:base**="http://www.cesr.univ-tours.fr">Centre d'Etudes Supérieures de la Renaissance (CESR)</**authority**>  
  <**availability**>  
   <**p**>Creative Commons Attribution - Pas d’Utilisation Commerciale - Partage dans les Mêmes Conditions 4.0 (CC BY-NC-SA 4.0).  
   <**date** **when**="2010">2010</**date**>  
   </**p**>  
  </**availability**>  
 </**publicationStmt**>  
 <**sourceDesc**>  
  <**msDesc**>  
   <**msIdentifier** **xml:id**="Res\_Z\_1110">  
    <**country**>France</**country**>  
    <**settlement**>Paris</**settlement**>  
    <**institution**>Bibliothèque nationale de France</**institution**>  
    <**repository** **key**="751131011">Réserve des livres rares</**repository**>  
    <**idno** **type**="cote">Res-Z-1110</**idno**>  
   </**msIdentifier**>  
   <**msContents**>  
    <**p**>  
     <**biblStruct**>  
      <**monogr**>  
       <**author**>  
        <**persName** **role**="auteur\_présumé">  
         <**surname**>Vinet</**surname**>  
         <**forename**>Élie</**forename**>  
        </**persName**>  
       </**author**>  
       <**title**>Discours non plus melancoliques que divers, de choses mesmement qui appartiennent a notre France:  
               &amp; a la fin La maniere de bien &amp; justement entoucher les Lucs &amp; Guiternes.</**title**>  
       <**imprint**>  
        <**pubPlace**>Poitiers</**pubPlace**>  
        <**respStmt**>  
         <**resp**>imprimeur</**resp**>  
         <**persName** **key**="pers12">  
          <**surname**>Marnef</**surname**>  
          <**forename**>Enguilbert de</**forename**>  
         </**persName**>  
        </**respStmt**>  
        <**date** **when**="1557">1557</**date**>  
       </**imprint**>  
      </**monogr**>  
     </**biblStruct**>  
    </**p**>  
   </**msContents**>  
   <**physDesc**>  
    <**objectDesc**>  
     <**supportDesc**>  
      <**collation**>  
       <**p**>60 f., [4] f., 112, [1 bl.] p.</**p**>  
       <**dimensions**>  
        <**dim** **type**="format">4°</**dim**>  
       </**dimensions**>  
      </**collation**>  
      <**condition**>  
       <**damage**>La page 9 (feuille dépliante paginée 9 entre les pages 8 et 10) manque à l'exemplaire de Poitiers, cote DP1139.</**damage**>  
      </**condition**>  
     </**supportDesc**>  
    </**objectDesc**>  
   </**physDesc**>  
   <**additional**>  
    <**adminInfo**>  
     <**recordHist**>  
      <**source**>  
       <**listBibl**>  
        <**bibl** **xml:id**="DP1139">  
         <**author**>Vinet (E.)</**author**>,  
        <**title** **rend**="it">Discours non plus melancoliques que divers</**title**>,  
        <**pubPlace**>Poitiers</**pubPlace**>, <**date**>1557</**date**>,  
        <**orgName** **key**="B861946101">Médiathèque François Mitterrand</**orgName**>,  
        <**idno** **type**="cote">DP1139</**idno**>.  
        </**bibl**>  
               ...  
       </**listBibl**>  
      </**source**>  
     </**recordHist**>  
    </**adminInfo**>  
    <**surrogates**>  
     <**bibl**>  
      <**ref** **target**="http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k71448r"/>  
      <**relatedItem** **type**="original">  
       <**ref** **target**="#Res\_Z\_1110">Gallica</**ref**>  
      </**relatedItem**>  
     </**bibl**>  
    </**surrogates**>  
   </**additional**>  
  </**msDesc**>  
 </**sourceDesc**>  
</**fileDesc**>

## Description de l'encodage : <encodingDesc> encoding description

La description relative au codage précise les méthodes et les principes éditoriaux qui ont permis la transcription du texte et l'élaboration du fichier.

* L'élément <projectDesc> pour project description comprend la description succincte du projet électronique.
* L'élément <editorialDecl> pour editorial declaration comprend les pratiques éditoriales de l'encodage dont celles du présent manuel :
  + <correction> Les erreurs détectées dans la source sont listées.
  + <hyphenation> Les consignes au sujet des coupures de mots en fin de ligne sont écrites.
  + <normalization> Normes de transcription pour l'édition électronique. Les descriptions des symboles graphiques sont définies ici. Voici un exemple type tiré des *Discours* :

<**encodingDesc**>  
 <**projectDesc**>  
  <**p**>BVH : programme "bibliothèques virtuelles humanistes"</**p**>  
 </**projectDesc**>  
 <**editorialDecl**>  
  <**correction**>  
   <**p**>  
    <**title**>LISTE DES VARIANTES ET DES CORRECTIONS</**title**>  
   </**p**>  
   <**p**>...</**p**>  
  </**correction**>  
  <**hyphenation**>  
   <**p**>La division des mots en fin de ligne respecte l'original. </**p**>  
  </**hyphenation**>  
  <**normalization**>  
   <**p**>Cette transcription suit l'édition de 1556.</**p**>  
  </**normalization**>  
 </**editorialDecl**>  
</**encodingDesc**>

## Description non bibliographique : <profileDesc> text-profile description

Cette partie concerne les informations non bibliographiques décrivant un document.

L'élément <langUsage> spécifie la ou les langues utilisées. S'y associe l'élément <language> : l'identification est indiquée par l'attribut *@ident* auquel est associé le code de la langue. La nomenclature des codes standards correspond à la norme ISO 639 (augmentée de 639-3 pour les langues qui ne sont pas dans la norme 639-1). De nombreuses langues figurent dans les *Discours* et doivent être déclarées dans l'en-tête TEI avant de les encoder dans le texte, ainsi :

<**profileDesc**>  
 <**langUsage**>  
  <**language** **ident**="frm">Français</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="la">Latin</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="el">Grec</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="de">Allemand</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="it">Italien</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="po">Portugais</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="sp">Espagnol</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="bre">Breton</**language**>  
  <**language** **ident**="eus">Basque</**language**>  
 </**langUsage**>  
</**profileDesc**>

Les informations sur la création du texte peuvent être données ici grâce à l'élément <creation>. D'autres éléments comme <textClass> pour text classification ou <handNotes> peuvent être incorporés dans la liste des éléments susceptibles d'être utilisés pour établir respectivement une taxonomie et une liste des différentes mains identifiées dans le texte-source.

## Journal de modifications : <revisionDesc> revision description

À chaque révision du fichier, une description des modifications apportées est marquée grâce à l'élé­ment <revisionDesc>. Elle alimente un journal des modifications.

* L'élément <change> enregistre les séquences. On y ajoutera l'élément <date>.
* Un second élément <name>, imbriqué dans <change>, indique le nom de l'encodeur et de la personne qui contrôle l'encodage. On peut ajouter le motif du changement en texte libre.

<**revisionDesc**>  
 <**change**>  
  <**date**>2007-05-18</**date**>  
  <**name**>Nicole Dufournaud</**name**>  
   Création du fichier en TEI P5 pour encodage  
 </**change**>  
</**revisionDesc**>

# Le codage des caractères

## Caractères spéciaux

Pour les textes en langue française (unicode UTF-8), le fichier doit commencer par la ligne de code suivante :

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

Elle permet de résoudre les problèmes posés par les caractères accentués et le « ç ». Il est fortement recommandé de ne jamais mettre ni d'accent ni de caractère français dans les valeurs d'attribut ; il faut renoncer aux caractères suivants : « é », « è », « ç », « à » et « ù ». Ces recommandations valent également pour les noms de fichiers. En revanche, dans le texte, ces mêmes caractères peuvent être utilisés grâce au standard Unicode[[21]](#footnote-22). Nous soulignons des exceptions. Dans les fichiers XML, trois caractères ne peuvent pas être utilisés tels quels : « < », « > », « & » ; deux autres caractères ne peuvent pas être utilisés dans les attributs : « ' » et les guillemets. Les raisons sont évidentes pour les deux premiers : ce sont les chevrons d'ouverture et fermeture de balises XML ; pour le troisième, la raison est identique car le « & » est utilisé pour définir les entités ; les guillemets sont également utilisés ainsi que l'apostrophe. Exemples :

* pour & : saisir &amp; dans le texte ;
* pour ' : saisir &#x2019; dans l'attribut de la balise ;
* pour " : saisir &quote; dans l'attribut de la balise.

Ces développements sont invisibles dans l'affichage en HTML.

Pour les textes de la Renaissance, le caractère « & » pose particulièrement problème car il est utilisé de façon très régulière par les scripteurs de l'époque.

Si l'on part d'un texte déjà transcrit à l'aide d'un traitement de texte, il est recommandé de le convertir d'abord au format « texte unicode » (ou d'utiliser LibreOffice/OpenOffice) pour éviter les problèmes des caractères accentués et spéciaux.

1. Index des illustrations
   1. Illustrations

Illustration 1: Chapitre 23 du *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais, édition 1546

Illustration 2: Transcription du chapitre 23 du *Tiers Livre*

Illustration 3: Fins de ligne dans le *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais 1546, prologue (p. 2)

Illustration 4: Titre courant des *Euvres* de Louise Labé (p. 19)

Illustration 5: Pied de page des *Euvres* de Louise Labé (p. 3)

Illustration 6: Tableau simple à deux colonnes tiré des *Discours* (p. 1)

Illustration 7: Affichage d'un tableau simple à deux colonnes tiré des *Discours* (p. 1)

Illustration 8: Dépliant des *Discours* (p. 9)

Illustration 9: Affichage du dépliant des *Discours* (p. 9)

Illustration 10: Table des matières du *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais 1546.

Illustration 11: Affichage d'un extrait de la table des matières du *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais 1546.

Illustration 12: Appel de note dans les *Euvres* de Louise Labé (p. 154)

Illustration 13: *Euvres* de Louise Labé (p. 11)

Illustration 14: Rature dans les *Discours* (p. 66)

Illustration 15: Ajout dans le privilège du roi des *Discours*

Illustration 16: Extrait de la page de titre des *Euvres* de Louise Labé

Illustration 17: Ajout et rature dans le *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais de 1552, exemplaire de la Gordon Collection

Illustration 18: Expression tirée du *Tiers Livre* de Rabelais (p. 83 verso)

Illustration 19: Référence bibliographique dans les *Discours* (p. 8)

Illustration 20: Citation avec une référence bibliographique (*Tiers Livre* de 1552 p. 38)

Illustration 21: Illustration de la page de titre des *Discours*

Illustration 22: Affichage de l'illustration de la page de titre des *Discours*

1. Bibliographie

Cahiers Gutenberg, « Numéro spécial : TEI Text Encoding Initiative », dir. Jacques ANDRE, Rennes, n° 24, juin 1996.

Discours non plus mélancoliques que divers, [Elie VINET ?], Poitiers, Enguilbert de Marnef, 1556 (d'après un exemplaire reproduit sur [Gallica](http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k71448r), et un autre, daté de 1557, de la Médiathèque François-Mitterrand de Poitiers en ligne sur le site des [BVH](http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/Consult/consult.asp?numtable=B861946101_DP1139&numfiche=71&mode=3&offset=0&ecran=0)).

Euvres, Louise Labé, Lyon, Jean de Tournes, 1555 (d'après un exemplaire original dispo­nible sur le site [Gallica](http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/btv1b86095588/f11.image.r) de la Bibliothèque de France).

Guidelines : Noms et dates, <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html>.

Le Tiers Livre, François Rabelais, Paris, Chrétien Wechel, 1546 ([BVH](http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/Consult/consult.asp?numtable=B372616101_3537&numfiche=61&mode=3&offset=0&ecran=0)), et Paris, Michel Fezandat, 1552 ([Gallica](http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/btv1b8600033x/f5.image)).

Manuel Base Français Médiéval, <http://bfm.ens-lyon.fr/IMG/pdf/Manuel_Encodage_TEI.pdf>

Mutec : schéma XML, <http://guides-reperes.mutec-shs.fr/node/58>

Site Jacques André, <http://jacques-andre.fr/japublis/>

Unicode.org, <http://www.unicode.org>

Xml précis et concis, Simon St. Laurent et Michael Fitzgerald, traduction de Philippe Ensarguet et Jean-Noël Gadreau, Paris, Ed. O'Reilly, 2005.

1. Liste des éléments décrits
   1. Elements
      1. <TEI>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. [[4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)  [15.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.version](#TEI.data.version) | | **Note** | The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the *@source* of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5. | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** text  **transcr:** facsimile |
| **Declaration** | element TEI {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute version { [data.version](#TEI.data.version) }?,  ( [teiHeader](#TEI.teiHeader), ( ( [model.resourceLike](#TEI.model.resourceLike)+, [text](#TEI.text)? ) | [text](#TEI.text) ) )  >>  tei:constraintSpec [ ident = "c1" scheme = "isoschematron" " " ]  >>  tei:constraintSpec [ ident = "c2" scheme = "isoschematron" ] } |
| **Schematron** | <s:ns prefix="tei"  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs"  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/> |
| **Schematron** | <s:ns prefix="rng"  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5          version using a name space.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**>    <**p**>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</**p**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Note** | This element is required. |

* + 1. <ab>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [[16.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) ] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **note** | | |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** availability change correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation normalization projectDesc publicationStmt sourceDesc typeNote  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition decoDesc decoNote handDesc history msContents msDesc objectDesc physDesc provenance recordHist source support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc  **namesdates:** person  **textstructure:** back body div epigraph front  **transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element ab {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.att.fragmentable),  attribute type { "note" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="book" **n**="Genesis">  <**div** **type**="chapter" **n**="1">   <**ab**>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</**ab**>   <**ab**>And the earth was without form, and void; and      darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the      spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</**ab**>   <**ab**>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</**ab**> <!-- ...-->  </**div**> </**div**> |
| **Note** | The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined. |

* + 1. <abbr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [[3.5.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element abbr {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**choice**>  <**expan**>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</**expan**>  <**abbr** **cert**="low">NorATO</**abbr**>  <**abbr** **cert**="high">NATO</**abbr**>  <**abbr** **cert**="high" **xml:lang**="fr">OTAN</**abbr**> </**choice**> |
| **Example** | <**choice**>  <**abbr**>SPQR</**abbr**>  <**expan**>senatus populusque romanorum</**expan**> </**choice**> |
| **Note** | The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate. |

* + 1. <accMat>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<accMat>** (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period. [[10.7.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msadac) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element accMat {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**accMat**>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope  with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</**accMat**> |

* + 1. <acquisition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<acquisition>** contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution. [[10.8.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#mshy) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** history |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element acquisition {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**acquisition**>Left to the <**name** **type**="place">Bodleian</**name**> by <**name** **type**="person">Richard Rawlinson</**name**> in 1755. </**acquisition**> |

* + 1. <add>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) [att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional) (@hand, @seq) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.placement](#TEI.att.placement) | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **above**  **add37v\_2**  **argin-left**  **below**  **bot**  **bottom**  **bottom\_f142r**  **bottom\_previousPage**  **endPage**  **end\_Page**  **end\_nextPage**  **indéterminée**  **interligne**  **interligne\_margin-right**  **left**  **magin-left**  **margin-above**  **margin-bottom**  **margin-buttom**  **margin-gauche**  **margin-left**  **margin-left\_vertical**  **margin-left\_verticalement**  **margin-right**  **margin-right\_vertical**  **margin-right\_verticalement**  **margin-rigt\_verticalement**  **margin-top**  **margin\_left**  **margin\_right**  **margn-left**  **mrgin-left**  **next**  **next-Page\_bottom**  **next-page\_bottom**  **page\_end**  **previousPage**  **previousPage\_bottom**  **previousPage\_verticalement**  **right**  **suite\_bottom**  **superposition**  **superpositon**  **superpostion**  **superpotion**  **top**  **top-left**  **top-right**  **top\_page**  **top\_superposition** | | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **provenance** | | |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element add {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.transcriptional.attribute.hand](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.transcriptional.attribute.seq](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.source.attribute.source](#TEI.att.source),  attribute place  {  list  {  (  "above"  | "add37v\_2"  | "argin-left"  | "below"  | "bot"  | "bottom"  | "bottom\_f142r"  | "bottom\_previousPage"  | "endPage"  | "end\_Page"  | "end\_nextPage"  | "indéterminée"  | "interligne"  | "interligne\_margin-right"  | "left"  | "magin-left"  | "margin-above"  | "margin-bottom"  | "margin-buttom"  | "margin-gauche"  | "margin-left"  | "margin-left\_vertical"  | "margin-left\_verticalement"  | "margin-right"  | "margin-right\_vertical"  | "margin-right\_verticalement"  | "margin-rigt\_verticalement"  | "margin-top"  | "margin\_left"  | "margin\_right"  | "margn-left"  | "mrgin-left"  | "next"  | "next-Page\_bottom"  | "next-page\_bottom"  | "page\_end"  | "previousPage"  | "previousPage\_bottom"  | "previousPage\_verticalement"  | "right"  | "suite\_bottom"  | "superposition"  | "superpositon"  | "superpostion"  | "superpotion"  | "top"  | "top-left"  | "top-right"  | "top\_page"  | "top\_superposition"  )+  }  }?,  attribute type { "provenance" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | The story I am  going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the  consequences <**add** **place**="above">of these facts</**add**> from which  this tale takes its title. |
| **Note** | In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project. |

* + 1. <addName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addName>** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **epithete-honneur** | | |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element addName {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "epithete-honneur" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**addName** **type**="epithet">the Great</**addName**>  <**roleName**>Emperor of Prussia</**roleName**> </**persName**> |

* + 1. <additional>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<additional>** groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information. [[10.9.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msad) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** listBibl  **msdescription:** adminInfo surrogates |
| **Declaration** | element additional {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [adminInfo](#TEI.adminInfo)?, [surrogates](#TEI.surrogates)?, [listBibl](#TEI.listBibl)? ) } |
| **Example** | <**additional**>  <**adminInfo**>   <**recordHist**>    <**p**> <!-- record history here -->    </**p**>   </**recordHist**>   <**custodialHist**>    <**p**> <!-- custodial history here -->    </**p**>   </**custodialHist**>  </**adminInfo**>  <**surrogates**>   <**p**> <!-- information about surrogates here -->   </**p**>  </**surrogates**>  <**listBibl**>   <**bibl**> <!-- ... -->   </**bibl**> <!-- full bibliography here -->  </**listBibl**> </**additional**> |

* + 1. <additions>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<additions>** contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations. [[10.7.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph2) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element additions {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**additions**>  <**p**>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of    single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a drawing of    a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v:  <**q** **xml:lang**="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</**q**>,    on 19r: <**q** **xml:lang**="is">þeim go</**q**>,    on 21r: <**q** **xml:lang**="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud summu all huad      batar þad mælgi ok mal</**q**>,    On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <**q** **xml:lang**="la">aue maria gracia plena dominus</**q**>.</**p**> </**additions**> |

* + 1. <addrLine>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [[3.5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)  [2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)  [3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element addrLine {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>60680 USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**addrLine**>  <**ref** **target**="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</**ref**> </**addrLine**> |
| **Note** | Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text. |

* + 1. <address>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [[3.5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)  [2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)  [3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language publicationStmt rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note pb  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element address {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( ( [model.addrPart](#TEI.model.addrPart) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ) } |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**name**>Bologna</**name**>  <**name** **n**="I">Italy</**name**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL 60680</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Note** | This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc. |

* + 1. <adminInfo>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<adminInfo>** (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself. [[10.9.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msadad) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** additional |
| **May contain** | **core:** note  **header:** availability  **msdescription:** recordHist |
| **Declaration** | element adminInfo {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [recordHist](#TEI.recordHist)?, [availability](#TEI.availability)?, [custodialHist](#TEI.custodialHist)?, [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike)? ) } |
| **Example** | <**adminInfo**>  <**recordHist**>   <**source**>Record created <**date**>1 Aug 2004</**date**>   </**source**>  </**recordHist**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this      collection has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask repository staff for details      if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:      Correspondence.</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**custodialHist**>   <**p**>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of      Edgar Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</**p**>  </**custodialHist**> </**adminInfo**> |

* + 1. <altIdentifier>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<altIdentifier>** (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number. [[10.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msid) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** note  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** collection institution repository  **namesdates:** country geogName placeName settlement |
| **Declaration** | element altIdentifier {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  [model.placeNamePart\_sequenceOptional](#TEI.model.placeNamePart),  [institution](#TEI.institution)?,  [repository](#TEI.repository)?,  [collection](#TEI.collection)?,  [idno](#TEI.idno),  [note](#TEI.note)?  ) } |
| **Example** | <**altIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>San Marino</**settlement**>  <**repository**>Huntington Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS.El.26.C.9</**idno**> </**altIdentifier**> |
| **Note** | An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated. |

* + 1. <app>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<app>** (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more readings or notes on the relevant passage. [[12.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPEN) ] | |
| **Module** | textcrit |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element app {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [lem](#TEI.lem), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [wit](#TEI.wit), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )? )?,  (  ( [model.rdgLike](#TEI.model.rdgLike), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [wit](#TEI.wit), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )? )  | ( [rdgGrp](#TEI.rdgGrp), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [wit](#TEI.wit), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )? )  )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**app**>  <**lem** **wit**="#El #Hg">Experience</**lem**>  <**rdg** **wit**="#La" **type**="substantive">Experiment</**rdg**>  <**rdg** **wit**="#Ra2" **type**="substantive">Eryment</**rdg**> </**app**> |
| **Example** | <**app** **type**="substantive">  <**rdgGrp** **type**="subvariants">   <**lem** **wit**="#El #Hg">Experience</**lem**>   <**rdg** **wit**="#Ha4">Experiens</**rdg**>  </**rdgGrp**>  <**rdgGrp** **type**="subvariants">   <**lem** **wit**="#Cp #Ld1">Experiment</**lem**>   <**rdg** **wit**="#La">Ex<**g** **ref**="#per"/>iment</**rdg**>  </**rdgGrp**>  <**rdgGrp** **type**="subvariants">   <**lem** **resp**="#ed2013">Eriment</**lem**>   <**rdg** **wit**="#Ra2">Eryment</**rdg**>  </**rdgGrp**> </**app**> |
| **Example** | <**app** **loc**="1">  <**rdg** **resp**="#SEG">TIMΩΔA</**rdg**> </**app**> |
| **Example** | <**app** **loc**="1-6">  <**note**>Too badly worn to yield a text</**note**> </**app**> |
| **Example** | <**choice** **xml:id**="choice3">  <**reg**>σύμπαντα</**reg**>  <**orig**>ΣΙΝΠΑΤΑΝ</**orig**> </**choice**> <!-- ... --> <**app** **from**="#choice3">  <**note**>Mommsen's fanciful normalization, reproduced here, has not been accepted by all recent editions</**note**> </**app**> |

* + 1. <author>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [[3.11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)  [2.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.naming | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **auteur**  **auteur\_liminaire**  **auteur\_preface**  **auteur\_presume**  **auteur\_secondaire** | | |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element author {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute role  {  list  {  (  "auteur"  | "auteur\_liminaire"  | "auteur\_preface"  | "auteur\_presume"  | "auteur\_secondaire"  )+  }  }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**author**>British Broadcasting Corporation</**author**> <**author**>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</**author**> <**author**>Anonymous</**author**> <**author**>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</**author**> <**author**>  <**persName**>Beaumont, Francis</**persName**> and <**persName**>John Fletcher</**persName**> </**author**> <**author**>  <**orgName** **key**="BBC">British Broadcasting    Corporation</**orgName**>: Radio 3 Network </**author**> |
| **Note** | Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *@key* or *@ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given. |

* + 1. <authority>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [[2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** monogr  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address cb choice date expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note pb ref term title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** fw metamark space subst |
| **Declaration** | element authority {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |
| **Example** | <**authority**>John Smith</**authority**> |

* + 1. <availability>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr series  **header:** publicationStmt  **msdescription:** adminInfo |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element availability {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.availabilityPart](#TEI.model.availabilityPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) )+ } |
| **Example** | <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available for academic research purposes only.</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="free">  <**p**>In the public domain</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available under licence from the publishers.</**p**> </**availability**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **target**="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">   <**p**>The MIT License      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</**p**>   <**p**>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</**p**>   <**p**>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</**p**>   <**p**>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN      THE SOFTWARE.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted |

* + 1. <back>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [[4.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSBACK)  [4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text  **transcr:** facsimile |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap head lb list milestone note p pb  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textstructure:** byline closer div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph signed titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element back {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  (  [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.pLike.front](#TEI.model.pLike.front) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  (  ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) ),  ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  | (  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) ),  ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  )?  ),  ( ( ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) ), ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )? )  ) } |
| **Example** | <**back**>  <**div1** **type**="appendix">   <**head**>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</**head**>   <**p**>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </**p**>  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="epistle">   <**head**>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</**head**>   <**salute**>Sir.</**salute**>   <**p**>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please </**p**>  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="advert">   <**head**>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr      Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</**item**>    <**item** **n**="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations,        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="advert">   <**head**>    <**hi** **rend**="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</**hi**> Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the      Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &amp;c.        2s. 6d</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**div1**> </**back**> |
| **Note** | The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history. |

* + 1. <bibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [[3.11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY)  [2.2.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition sourceDesc taxonomy typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **namesdates:** person  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice corr date del editor expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note orig pb pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt series sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** availability edition extent idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim msIdentifier  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element bibl {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.highlighted](#TEI.model.highlighted) | [model.pPart.data](#TEI.model.pPart.data) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) | [model.segLike](#TEI.model.segLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [model.biblPart](#TEI.model.biblPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,  1990)</**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>. <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>  <**date**>1968</**date**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl** **type**="article" **subtype**="book\_chapter"  **xml:id**="carlin\_2003">  <**author**>   <**name**>    <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>      (<**forename**>Claire</**forename**>)</**name**>  </**author**>, <**title** **level**="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last    congrès</**title**> dans <**bibl** **type**="monogr">   <**title** **level**="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.      Tobin</**title**>, éd.  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Claire</**forename**>     <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**> et  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Kathleen</**forename**>     <**surname**>Wine</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**>,  <**pubPlace**>Charlottesville, Va.</**pubPlace**>,  <**publisher**>Rookwood Press</**publisher**>,  <**date** **when**="2003">2003</**date**>.  </**bibl**> </**bibl**> |
| **Note** | Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the biblPart class |

* + 1. <biblScope>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [[3.11.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.citing](#TEI.att.citing) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **collection**  **colonne**  **edition**  **notice**  **numero**  **page**  **tome**  **volume** | | | **type** | identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **page**  **tome** | | |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint monogr series |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element biblScope {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute unit  {  "collection"  | "colonne"  | "edition"  | "notice"  | "numero"  | "page"  | "tome"  | "volume"  }?,  attribute type { "page" | "tome" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**biblScope**>pp 12–34</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page" **from**="12" **to**="34"/> <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">II</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page">12</**biblScope**> |
| **Note** | When a single page is being cited, use the *@from* and *@to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *@from* attribute should be used without *@to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference. |

* + 1. <biblStruct>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblStruct>** (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [[3.11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY)  [2.2.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition sourceDesc taxonomy typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **namesdates:** person  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** monogr note ref relatedItem series  **header:** idno |
| **Declaration** | element biblStruct {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  (  [analytic](#TEI.analytic)\*,  ( [monogr](#TEI.monogr), [series](#TEI.series)\* )+,  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [relatedItem](#TEI.relatedItem) | [citedRange](#TEI.citedRange) )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**monogr**>   <**author**>Blain, Virginia</**author**>   <**author**>Clements, Patricia</**author**>   <**author**>Grundy, Isobel</**author**>   <**title**>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the middle ages      to the present</**title**>   <**edition**>first edition</**edition**>   <**imprint**>    <**publisher**>Yale University Press</**publisher**>    <**pubPlace**>New Haven and London</**pubPlace**>    <**date**>1990</**date**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |

* + 1. <binding>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<binding>** contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript. [[10.7.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msphbi) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** bindingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** condition decoNote |
| **Declaration** | element binding {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [condition](#TEI.condition) | [decoNote](#TEI.decoNote) )+ } |
| **Example** | <**binding** **contemporary**="true">  <**p**>Contemporary blind stamped leather over wooden boards with evidence of a fore edge clasp    closing to the back cover.</**p**> </**binding**> |
| **Example** | <**bindingDesc**>  <**binding** **contemporary**="false">   <**p**>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker on the front      pastedown.</**p**>  </**binding**>  <**binding** **contemporary**="false">   <**p**>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and gilt.</**p**>  </**binding**> </**bindingDesc**> |

* + 1. <bindingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bindingDesc>** (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <binding> elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [[10.7.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msphbi) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** binding condition decoNote |
| **Declaration** | element bindingDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [decoNote](#TEI.decoNote) | [condition](#TEI.condition) )+ | [binding](#TEI.binding)+ ) } |
| **Example** | <**bindingDesc**>  <**p**>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over    19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with    gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each    cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in    gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the    spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured    endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</**p**> </**bindingDesc**> |

* + 1. <body>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div docDate epigraph opener salute signed trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element body {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) ), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) )\* )?,  ( ( [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )?,  (  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) ), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) ), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | (  ( ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  (  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) ), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) ), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  )?  )  ),  ( ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <byline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [[4.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)  [4.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSFRONT) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front opener titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element byline {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [docAuthor](#TEI.docAuthor) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**byline**>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the  while in London. Never made publick before.</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>BY <**docAuthor**>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</**docAuthor**>  Master of Arts,  (Somtimes)  Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</**byline**> |
| **Note** | The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element. |

* + 1. <castGroup>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<castGroup>** (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual castItem elements within a cast list. [[7.1.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRCAST) ] | |
| **Module** | drama |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **drama:** castGroup castList |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap head lb milestone note pb  **drama:** castGroup castItem roleDesc  **figures:** figure  **textstructure:** trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element castGroup {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) )\*,  ( ( [castItem](#TEI.castItem) | [castGroup](#TEI.castGroup) | [roleDesc](#TEI.roleDesc) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  ( [trailer](#TEI.trailer), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?  ) } |
| **Example** | <**castGroup** **rend**="braced">  <**castItem**>   <**role**>Walter</**role**>   <**actor**>Mr Frank Hall</**actor**>  </**castItem**>  <**castItem**>   <**role**>Hans</**role**>   <**actor**>Mr F.W. Irish</**actor**>  </**castItem**>  <**roleDesc**>friends of Mathias</**roleDesc**> </**castGroup**> |
| **Note** | The *@rend* attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc.Note that in this example the role description ‘friends of Mathias’ is understood to apply to both roles equally. |

* + 1. <castItem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<castItem>** (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [[7.1.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRCAST) ] | |
| **Module** | drama |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **drama:** castGroup castList |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **drama:** role roleDesc  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element castItem {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.castItemPart](#TEI.model.castItemPart) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**castItem**>  <**role**>Player</**role**>  <**actor**>Mr Milward</**actor**> </**castItem**> |
| **Example** | <**castItem** **type**="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</**castItem**> |

* + 1. <castList>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<castList>** (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. [[7.1.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRCAST)  [7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRFAB) ] | |
| **Module** | drama |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.frontPart.drama model.inter |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body div epigraph front imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textstructure:** byline dateline docDate epigraph opener salute signed  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element castList {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  ( ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*,  ( ( [castItem](#TEI.castItem) | [castGroup](#TEI.castGroup) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  ( ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**castList**>  <**castGroup**>   <**head** **rend**="braced">Mendicants</**head**>   <**castItem**>    <**role**>Aafaa</**role**>    <**actor**>Femi Johnson</**actor**>   </**castItem**>   <**castItem**>    <**role**>Blindman</**role**>    <**actor**>Femi Osofisan</**actor**>   </**castItem**>   <**castItem**>    <**role**>Goyi</**role**>    <**actor**>Wale Ogunyemi</**actor**>   </**castItem**>   <**castItem**>    <**role**>Cripple</**role**>    <**actor**>Tunji Oyelana</**actor**>   </**castItem**>  </**castGroup**>  <**castItem**>   <**role**>Si Bero</**role**>   <**roleDesc**>Sister to Dr Bero</**roleDesc**>   <**actor**>Deolo Adedoyin</**actor**>  </**castItem**>  <**castGroup**>   <**head** **rend**="braced">Two old women</**head**>   <**castItem**>    <**role**>Iya Agba</**role**>    <**actor**>Nguba Agolia</**actor**>   </**castItem**>   <**castItem**>    <**role**>Iya Mate</**role**>    <**actor**>Bopo George</**actor**>   </**castItem**>  </**castGroup**>  <**castItem**>   <**role**>Dr Bero</**role**>   <**roleDesc**>Specialist</**roleDesc**>   <**actor**>Nat Okoro</**actor**>  </**castItem**>  <**castItem**>   <**role**>Priest</**role**>   <**actor**>Gbenga Sonuga</**actor**>  </**castItem**>  <**castItem**>   <**role**>The old man</**role**>   <**roleDesc**>Bero's father</**roleDesc**>   <**actor**>Dapo Adelugba</**actor**>  </**castItem**> </**castList**> <**stage** **type**="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of  Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</**stage**> |

* + 1. <catRef/>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<catRef/>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [[2.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.pointing (@target) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** imprint  **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Declaration** | element catRef {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  attribute scheme { [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) }?,  empty } |
| **Example** | <**catRef** **scheme**="#myTopics"  **target**="#news #prov #sales2"/> <!-- elsewhere --> <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="myTopics">  <**category** **xml:id**="news">   <**catDesc**>Newspapers</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="prov">   <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="sales2">   <**catDesc**>Low to average annual sales</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Note** | The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared. |

* + 1. <cb/>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cb/>** (column break) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [[3.10.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Declaration** | element cb {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  empty } |
| **Example** | Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:  <**pb**/> <**cb** **n**="1"/> <**entryFree**>  <**form**>Well</**form**>, <**sense**>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</**sense**>: <**sense**>In the Art of <**hi** **rend**="italic">War</**hi**>, a Depth the Miner    sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,    or to prepare one</**sense**>. </**entryFree**> <**entryFree**>To <**form**>Welter</**form**>, <**sense**>to wallow</**sense**>, or <**sense**>lie groveling</**sense**>.</**entryFree**> <!-- remainder of column --> <**cb** **n**="2"/> <**entryFree**>  <**form**>Wey</**form**>, <**sense**>the greatest Measure for dry Things,    containing five Chaldron</**sense**>. </**entryFree**> <**entryFree**>  <**form**>Whale</**form**>, <**sense**>the greatest of    Sea-Fishes</**sense**>. </**entryFree**> |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb/> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb/> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers. |

* + 1. <cell>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cell>** contains one cell of a table. [[14.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1) ] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) [att.tableDecoration](#TEI.att.tableDecoration) (role, @cols) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** row |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element cell {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols](#TEI.att.tableDecoration),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**row**>  <**cell** **role**="label">General conduct</**cell**>  <**cell** **role**="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality    and inattention to duties</**cell**> </**row**> |

* + 1. <change>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [[2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)  [2.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C)  [11.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.docStatus (@status) att.datable.w3c (notBefore, notAfter, @when) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** revisionDesc  **msdescription:** recordHist |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element change {  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [att.datable.w3c.attribute.when](#TEI.att.datable.w3c),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**> ... </**title**>  <**editor** **xml:id**="LDB">Lou Burnard</**editor**>  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="BZ">   <**resp**>copy editing</**resp**>   <**name**>Brett Zamir</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> <!-- ... --> <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **who**="#BZ" **when**="2008-02-02"   **status**="public">Finished chapter 23</**change**>  <**change** **who**="#BZ" **when**="2008-01-02"   **status**="draft">Finished chapter 2</**change**>  <**change** **n**="P2.2" **when**="1991-12-21"   **who**="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</**change**>  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT2"     **notBefore**="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly        using green ink</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT3"     **notBefore**="1881-02-13">Final corrections as        supplied to printer.</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *@status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented. |

* + 1. <charDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<charDecl>** (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [[5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/D2.html#D25-20) ] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc  **gaiji:** glyph |
| **Declaration** | element charDecl {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [desc](#TEI.desc)?, ( [char](#TEI.char) | [glyph](#TEI.glyph) )+ ) } |
| **Example** | <**charDecl**>  <**char** **xml:id**="aENL">   <**charName**>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</**charName**>   <**mapping** **type**="standard">a</**mapping**>  </**char**> </**charDecl**> |

* + 1. <choice>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [[3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.linePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear  **linking:** seg |
| **Declaration** | element choice {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.choicePart](#TEI.model.choicePart) | [choice](#TEI.choice) )\* } |
| **Example** | An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.  <**p**>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above  articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of  meat and drink sufficient for the support of <**choice**>   <**sic**>1724</**sic**>   <**corr**>1728</**corr**>  </**choice**> of our subjects,  with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our <**choice**>   <**orig**>favour</**orig**>   <**reg**>favor</**reg**>  </**choice**>.</**p**> |
| **Note** | Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest. Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section [12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) should be preferred. |

* + 1. <cit>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [[3.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)  [4.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP)  [9.3.5.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPEG) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **proverbe** | | |
| **Member of** | model.quoteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit gap lb listBibl milestone note pb q quote ref said  **figures:** figure  **msdescription:** msDesc  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element cit {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "proverbe" }?,  (  [model.qLike](#TEI.model.qLike) | [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.entryPart](#TEI.model.entryPart) )+ } |
| **Example** | <**cit**>  <**quote**>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</**quote**>  <**bibl**>Ulloa's South America</**bibl**> </**cit**> |
| **Example** | <**entry**>  <**form**>   <**orth**>horrifier</**orth**>  </**form**>  <**cit** **type**="translation" **xml:lang**="en">   <**quote**>to horrify</**quote**>  </**cit**>  <**cit** **type**="example">   <**quote**>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</**quote**>   <**cit** **type**="translation" **xml:lang**="en">    <**quote**>she was horrified at the expense.</**quote**>   </**cit**>  </**cit**> </**entry**> |

* + 1. <classDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [[2.3.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)  [2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** taxonomy |
| **Declaration** | element classDecl {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy)+ } |
| **Example** | <**classDecl**>  <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="LCSH">   <**bibl**>Library of Congress Subject Headings</**bibl**>  </**taxonomy**> </**classDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="#LCSH">   <**term**>Political science</**term**>   <**term**>United States -- Politics and government —      Revolution, 1775-1783</**term**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |

* + 1. <closer>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [[4.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)  [4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **textstructure:** dateline salute signed  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element closer {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [signed](#TEI.signed) | [dateline](#TEI.dateline) | [salute](#TEI.salute) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="letter">  <**p**> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**salute**>I remain, &amp;c. &amp;c.</**salute**>   <**signed**>H. Colburn</**signed**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="chapter">  <**p**> <!-- .... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**dateline**>    <**name** **type**="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</**name**>    <**date**>1914–1921</**date**>   </**dateline**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |

* + 1. <collation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<collation>** contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged. [[10.7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph1) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** supportDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element collation {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**collation**>The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf,  conjoint with the pastedown.</**collation**> |
| **Example** | <**collation**>  <**p**>   <**formula**>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text)      7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</**formula**>   <**catchwords**>Catchwords are written horizontally in center      or towards the right lower margin in various manners:      in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red      ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals);      quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames;      quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text;      quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in      cursive hand.</**catchwords**>  </**p**> </**collation**> |

* + 1. <collection>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<collection>** contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository. [[10.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msid) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** altIdentifier msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g |
| **Declaration** | element collection {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.xtext](#TEI.macro.xtext)} |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**country**>USA</**country**>  <**region**>California</**region**>  <**settlement**>San Marino</**settlement**>  <**repository**>Huntington Library</**repository**>  <**collection**>Ellesmere</**collection**>  <**idno**>El 26 C 9</**idno**>  <**msName**>The Ellesmere Chaucer</**msName**> </**msIdentifier**> |

* + 1. <condition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<condition>** contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript. [[10.7.1.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msphco) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** binding bindingDesc supportDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element condition {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**condition**>  <**p**>There are lacunae in three places in this    manuscript. After 14v two    leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine. After    68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of 8 leaves    has been lost. </**p**>  <**p**>Several leaves are damaged with tears or holes or have a    irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of full    length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears on fol.    2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v, 32r-35v,    37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r-v, 70r-v,    74r-80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On fol. 98    the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition due to    moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or    wrinkled. </**p**>  <**p**>The script has been    touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the following    fols. was done by  <**name**>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</**name**>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r,    6v, 8v,9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r,30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r,78r,103r, 104r,. An    AM-note says according to the lawman  <**name**>Sigurður Björnsson</**name**> that the rest of the    touching up was done by himself and another lawman  <**name**>Sigurður Jónsson</**name**>.  <**name**>Sigurður Björnsson</**name**> did the touching up    on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v.  <**name**>Sigurður Jónsson</**name**> did the rest of the    touching up in the section 36r-59r containing  <**title**>Bretasögur</**title**>  </**p**> </**condition**> |

* + 1. <corr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [[3.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (cert, @resp) att.source (@source) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element corr {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  [att.source.attribute.source](#TEI.att.source),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:  I don't know,  Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <**corr**>can we</**corr**> prove  or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —  how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or  disprove anyone's theories? |

* + 1. <correction>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<correction>** (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [[2.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element correction {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |
| **Example** | <**correction**>  <**p**>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user    defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century    Dictionary.</**p**> </**correction**> |
| **Note** | May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section [3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED). |

* + 1. <country>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<country>** contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier collation condition decoNote heraldry material msIdentifier provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element country {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**country** **key**="DK">Denmark</**country**> |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |

* + 1. <damage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<damage>** contains an area of damage to the text witness. [[11.3.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **agent** | categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.damaged](#TEI.att.damaged) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **encre** | | |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element damage {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute agent { "encre" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**l**>The Moving Finger wri<**damage** **agent**="water" **group**="1">es; and</**damage**> having writ,</**l**> <**l**>Moves <**damage** **agent**="water" **group**="1">   <**supplied**>on: nor all your</**supplied**>  </**damage**> Piety nor Wit</**l**> |
| **Note** | Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the <damage> element will often contain an <unclear> element. If the damaged area is not continuous (e.g. a stain affecting several strings of text), the *@group* attribute may be used to group together several related <damage> elements; alternatively the <join> element may be used to indicate which <damage> and <unclear> elements are part of the same physical phenomenon.The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section [11.3.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. |

* + 1. <date>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<date>** contains a date in any format. [[3.5.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA)  [2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)  [2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)  [3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)  [15.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE)  [13.3.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (resp, @cert)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **maj**  **mise\_a\_jour**  **mise\_en\_ligne**  **publication**  **revision**  **révision** | | |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language publicationStmt rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element date {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.cert](#TEI.att.responsibility),  attribute type  {  "maj"  | "mise\_a\_jour"  | "mise\_en\_ligne"  | "publication"  | "revision"  | "révision"  }?,  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1980-02">early February 1980</**date**> |
| **Example** | Given on the <**date** **when**="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day  of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic  the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1990-09">September 1990</**date**> |

* + 1. <dateline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [[4.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** body closer div front opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **textstructure:** docDate  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element dateline {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [docDate](#TEI.docDate) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**dateline**>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</**dateline**> |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="chapter">  <**p**> <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**dateline**>    <**name** **type**="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</**name**>    <**date**>1914–1921</**date**>   </**dateline**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |

* + 1. <decoDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<decoDesc>** (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript, either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organized <decoNote> elements. [[10.7.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph3) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** decoNote |
| **Declaration** | element decoDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [decoNote](#TEI.decoNote)+ ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**decoDesc**>  <**p**>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated    illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with red    penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses    with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</**p**> </**decoDesc**> |

* + 1. <decoNote>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<decoNote>** (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components. [[10.7.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph3) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** binding bindingDesc decoDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element decoNote {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**decoDesc**>  <**decoNote** **type**="initial">   <**p**>The start of each book of the Bible with      a 10-line historiated illuminated initial;      prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials      with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by      3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials,      alternately blue or red.</**p**>  </**decoNote**> </**decoDesc**> |

* + 1. <del>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) [att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional) (@hand, @seq) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **censure** | | |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element del {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.transcriptional.attribute.hand](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.transcriptional.attribute.seq](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.cert](#TEI.att.responsibility),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  attribute type { "censure" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**l**>  <**del** **rend**="overtyped">Mein</**del**> Frisch <**del** **rend**="overstrike" **type**="primary">schwebt</**del**>  weht der Wind </**l**> |
| **Example** | <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **reason**="illegible" **quantity**="5"   **unit**="character"/> </**del**> |
| **Note** | This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see [21.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE)). There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections [11.3.1.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHOM) and [11.3.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription. |

* + 1. <desc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [[22.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDcrystalsCEdc) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.translatable (@versionDate) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.descLike model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc gap graphic head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **gaiji:** charDecl glyph  **header:** change handNote rendition taxonomy typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod space supplied surface |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc expan foreign hi label list listBibl name q quote ref said stage term title  **drama:** castList  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** subst |
| **Declaration** | element desc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.translatable.attributes](#TEI.att.translatable),  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |
| **Example** | <**desc**>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute,  attribute value, class, or entity.</**desc**> |
| **Note** | TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb. |

* + 1. <dim>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<dim>** contains any single measurement forming part of a dimensional specification of some sort. [[10.3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msdim) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **format** | | | **unit** | names the unit used for the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.dimensions | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **ligne**  **lignes** | | |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote dimensions heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g |
| **Declaration** | element dim {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute type { "format" }?,  attribute unit { "ligne" | "lignes" }?,  [macro.xtext](#TEI.macro.xtext)} |
| **Example** | <**dim** **type**="circumference" **extent**="4.67 in"/> |
| **Note** | The specific elements <width>, <height>, and <depth> should be used in preference to this generic element wherever appropriate. |

* + 1. <dimensions>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<dimensions>** contains a dimensional specification. [[10.3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msdim) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **msdescription:** dim |
| **Declaration** | element dimensions {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  ( ( [dim](#TEI.dim) | [model.dimLike](#TEI.model.dimLike) )\* )  >>  tei:constraintSpec  [  scheme = "isoschematron"  ident = "duplicateDim"  " The element "  " may appear once only"  " "  " The element "  " may appear once only"  " "  " The element "  " may appear once only"  ] } |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="count(tei:width)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:height)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:depth)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> |
| **Example** | <**dimensions** **type**="leaves">  <**height** **scope**="range">157-160</**height**>  <**width**>105</**width**> </**dimensions**> <**dimensions** **type**="ruled">  <**height** **scope**="most">90</**height**>  <**width** **scope**="most">48</**width**> </**dimensions**> <**dimensions** **unit**="in">  <**height**>12</**height**>  <**width**>10</**width**> </**dimensions**> |
| **Example** | This element may be used to record the dimensions of any text-bearing object, not necessarily a codex. For example:  <**dimensions** **type**="panels">  <**height** **scope**="all">7004</**height**>  <**width** **scope**="all">1803</**width**>  <**dim** **type**="relief" **unit**="mm">345</**dim**> </**dimensions**>  This might be used to show that the inscribed panels on some (imaginary) monument are all the same size (7004 by 1803 cm) and stand out from the rest of the monument by 345 mm. |
| **Example** | When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the *@quantity* attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example:  <**dimensions** **type**="leaves">  <**height** **scope**="range">157-160</**height**>  <**width** **quantity**="105"/> </**dimensions**> <**dimensions** **type**="ruled">  <**height** **unit**="cm" **scope**="most"   **quantity**="90"/>  <**width** **unit**="cm" **scope**="most" **quantity**="48"/> </**dimensions**> <**dimensions** **unit**="in">  <**height** **quantity**="12"/>  <**width** **quantity**="10"/> </**dimensions**> |
| **Note** | Contains no more than one of each of the specialized elements used to express a three-dimensional object's height, width, and depth, combined with any number of other kinds of dimensional specification. |

* + 1. <div>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [[4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.divLike (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Lettre**  **acte**  **ajout\_ms**  **alphabet**  **anterotique**  **argument**  **au\_lecteur**  **avertissement**  **ballade**  **blason**  **carte**  **chanson**  **chant**  **chapitre**  **colophon**  **complainte**  **conclusion**  **contemplation**  **contreblason**  **couplet**  **debat**  **declaration**  **dedicace**  **dessein**  **discours**  **distique**  **dizain**  **douzain**  **eglogue**  **elegie**  **eloge**  **embleme**  **entreprise**  **epigramme**  **epitaphe**  **epitre**  **errata**  **excipit**  **exemple**  **glossaire**  **histoire**  **huitain**  **institution**  **introduction**  **lamentation**  **livre**  **madrigal**  **notes\_manuscrites**  **nouvelle**  **ode**  **odes**  **oeuvres**  **oeuvres\_de\_jeunesse**  **oraison**  **page\_de\_titre**  **plan**  **poeme**  **point**  **postface**  **preface**  **privilege**  **prologue**  **pronostication**  **quatrain**  **quintil**  **recette**  **registre**  **remontrance**  **reponse**  **resume**  **rondeau**  **septain**  **sommaire**  **sonnet**  **sonnets**  **stance**  **table**  **table\_des\_auteurs**  **tableau**  **traite**  **vers**  **vers\_lyriques** | | | **subtype** | provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **amours**  **au\_lecteur**  **dedicace**  **dedication**  **dizain**  **douzain**  **paradoxe**  **quatrain**  **sonnet**  **traduction**  **vers** | | |
| **Member of** | model.divLike |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div docDate epigraph opener salute signed trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element div {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.divLike.attributes](#TEI.att.divLike),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  attribute type  {  "Lettre"  | "acte"  | "ajout\_ms"  | "alphabet"  | "anterotique"  | "argument"  | "au\_lecteur"  | "avertissement"  | "ballade"  | "blason"  | "carte"  | "chanson"  | "chant"  | "chapitre"  | "colophon"  | "complainte"  | "conclusion"  | "contemplation"  | "contreblason"  | "couplet"  | "debat"  | "declaration"  | "dedicace"  | "dessein"  | "discours"  | "distique"  | "dizain"  | "douzain"  | "eglogue"  | "elegie"  | "eloge"  | "embleme"  | "entreprise"  | "epigramme"  | "epitaphe"  | "epitre"  | "errata"  | "excipit"  | "exemple"  | "glossaire"  | "histoire"  | "huitain"  | "institution"  | "introduction"  | "lamentation"  | "livre"  | "madrigal"  | "notes\_manuscrites"  | "nouvelle"  | "ode"  | "odes"  | "oeuvres"  | "oeuvres\_de\_jeunesse"  | "oraison"  | "page\_de\_titre"  | "plan"  | "poeme"  | "point"  | "postface"  | "preface"  | "privilege"  | "prologue"  | "pronostication"  | "quatrain"  | "quintil"  | "recette"  | "registre"  | "remontrance"  | "reponse"  | "resume"  | "rondeau"  | "septain"  | "sommaire"  | "sonnet"  | "sonnets"  | "stance"  | "table"  | "table\_des\_auteurs"  | "tableau"  | "traite"  | "vers"  | "vers\_lyriques"  }?,  attribute subtype  {  "amours"  | "au\_lecteur"  | "dedicace"  | "dedication"  | "dizain"  | "douzain"  | "paradoxe"  | "quatrain"  | "sonnet"  | "traduction"  | "vers"  }?,  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  ( ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ )  | (  ( ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )  ),  ( ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )?  ) } |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**div** **type**="part">   <**head**>Fallacies of Authority</**head**>   <**p**>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</**p**>   <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">    <**head**>The Nature of Authority</**head**>    <**p**>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest        happiness of the greatest number....</**p**>    <**div** **n**="1.1" **type**="section">     <**head**>Analysis of Authority</**head**>     <**p**>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to          authority ... </**p**>    </**div**>    <**div** **n**="1.2" **type**="section">     <**head**>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</**head**>     <**p**>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </**p**>    </**div**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**body**> |

* + 1. <docDate>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.w3c](#TEI.data.temporal.w3c) | | **Note** | For simple dates, the *@when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. | | |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body dateline div docImprint front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element docDate {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute when { [data.temporal.w3c](#TEI.data.temporal.w3c) }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**docImprint**>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <**docDate**>1987</**docDate**> </**docImprint**> |
| **Note** | Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it. |

* + 1. <docImprint>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb pubPlace publisher ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **textstructure:** docDate  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element docImprint {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [pubPlace](#TEI.pubPlace) | [docDate](#TEI.docDate) | [publisher](#TEI.publisher) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**docImprint**>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</**docImprint**>  Imprints may be somewhat more complex:  <**docImprint**>  <**pubPlace**>London</**pubPlace**>  Printed for <**name**>E. Nutt</**name**>,  at <**pubPlace**>Royal Exchange</**pubPlace**>; <**name**>J. Roberts</**name**> in <**pubPlace**>wick-Lane</**pubPlace**>; <**name**>A. Dodd</**name**> without <**pubPlace**>Temple-Bar</**pubPlace**>;  and <**name**>J. Graves</**name**> in <**pubPlace**>St. James's-street.</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1722.</**date**> </**docImprint**> |
| **Note** | Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often. |

* + 1. <docTitle>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **textstructure:** titlePart  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element docTitle {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [titlePart](#TEI.titlePart), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ) } |
| **Example** | <**docTitle**>  <**titlePart** **type**="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</**titlePart**>  <**titlePart** **type**="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</**titlePart**> </**docTitle**> |

* + 1. <edition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<edition>** describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [[2.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element edition {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**edition**>First edition <**date**>Oct 1990</**date**> </**edition**> <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**> |

* + 1. <editionStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [[2.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22)  [2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor p respStmt  **header:** edition  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element editionStmt {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [edition](#TEI.edition), [model.respLike](#TEI.model.respLike)\* ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Adapted by </**resp**>   <**name**>Elizabeth Kirk</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**p**>First edition, <**date**>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</**date**>  </**p**> </**editionStmt**> |

* + 1. <editor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.naming | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **annotateur**  **editeur\_scientifique**  **illustrateur**  **traducteur** | | |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr series  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element editor {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute role  {  list  {  (  "annotateur"  | "editeur\_scientifique"  | "illustrateur"  | "traducteur"  )+  }  }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**editor**>Eric Johnson</**editor**> <**editor** **role**="illustrator">John Tenniel</**editor**> |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted.Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. |

* + 1. <editorialDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [[2.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53)  [2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** correction hyphenation interpretation normalization  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element editorialDecl {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.editorialDeclPart](#TEI.model.editorialDeclPart) )+ } |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**normalization**>   <**p**>All words converted to Modern American spelling using      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary   </**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**quotation** **marks**="all">   <**p**>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing      quotation marks converted to &amp;cdq;.</**p**>  </**quotation**> </**editorialDecl**> |

* + 1. <encodingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [[2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)  [2.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **gaiji:** charDecl  **header:** classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc tagsDecl  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element encodingDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( ( [model.encodingDescPart](#TEI.model.encodingDescPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) )+ ) } |
| **Example** | <**encodingDesc**>  <**p**>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No    formatting or layout information preserved.</**p**> </**encodingDesc**> |

* + 1. <epigraph>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<epigraph>** contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [[4.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSAE)  [4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)  [4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front opener titlePage |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element epigraph {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**epigraph** **xml:lang**="la">  <**cit**>   <**bibl**>Lucret.</**bibl**>   <**quote**>    <**l** **part**="F">petere inde coronam,</**l**>    <**l**>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</**l**>   </**quote**>  </**cit**> </**epigraph**> |

* + 1. <expan>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [[3.5.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.source (@source) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element expan {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.source.attribute.source](#TEI.att.source),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | The address is Southmoor <**choice**>  <**expan**>Road</**expan**>  <**abbr**>Rd</**abbr**> </**choice**> |
| **Example** | <**expan** **xml:lang**="la">  <**abbr**>Imp</**abbr**>  <**ex**>erator</**ex**> </**expan**> |
| **Note** | The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion. |

* + 1. <extent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [[2.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD23)  [2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)  [3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)  [10.7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph1) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** fileDesc  **msdescription:** supportDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element extent {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**extent**>3200 sentences</**extent**> <**extent**>between 10 and 20 Mb</**extent**> <**extent**>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</**extent**> |
| **Example** | The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.  <**extent**>  <**measure** **unit**="MiB" **quantity**="4.2">About four megabytes</**measure**>  <**measure** **unit**="pages" **quantity**="245">245 pages of source    material</**measure**> </**extent**> |

* + 1. <facsimile>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<facsimile>** contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [[11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.resourceLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic  **textstructure:** back front  **transcr:** surface |
| **Declaration** | element facsimile {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  ( [front](#TEI.front)?, ( [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) | [surface](#TEI.surface) | [surfaceGrp](#TEI.surfaceGrp) )+, [back](#TEI.back)? ) } |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>  <**surface**>   <**graphic** **url**="page2-highRes.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2-lowRes.png"/>  </**surface**>  <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>  <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/> </**facsimile**> |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surface** **ulx**="0" **uly**="0" **lrx**="200" **lry**="300">   <**graphic** **url**="Bovelles-49r.png"/>  </**surface**> </**facsimile**> |

* + 1. <figDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [[14.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTGRA) ] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** figure |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc expan foreign hi label list listBibl name q quote ref said stage term title  **drama:** castList  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** subst |
| **Declaration** | element figDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**graphic** **url**="emblem1.png"/>  <**head**>Emblemi d'Amore</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes. |

* + 1. <figure>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<figure>** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [[14.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTGRA) ] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **marque\_lettrine\_illustration\_portrait\_bandeau\_fleuron\_vignette** | | |
| **Member of** | model.global |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **gaiji:** glyph  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap graphic head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figDesc figure table  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate epigraph salute signed trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element figure {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type  {  "marque\_lettrine\_illustration\_portrait\_bandeau\_fleuron\_vignette"  }?,  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) | [model.common](#TEI.model.common) | [figDesc](#TEI.figDesc) | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **url**="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"   **scale**="0.5"/> </**figure**> |

* + 1. <fileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)  [2.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Declaration** | element fileDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  (  [titleStmt](#TEI.titleStmt),  [editionStmt](#TEI.editionStmt)?,  [extent](#TEI.extent)?,  [publicationStmt](#TEI.publicationStmt),  [seriesStmt](#TEI.seriesStmt)?,  [notesStmt](#TEI.notesStmt)?  ),  [sourceDesc](#TEI.sourceDesc)+  ) } |
| **Example** | <**fileDesc**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The shortest possible TEI document</**title**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**p**>Distributed as part of TEI P5</**p**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**fileDesc**> |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |

* + 1. <foreign>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<foreign>** identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [[3.3.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHF) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element foreign {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | This is  heathen Greek to you still? Your <**foreign** **xml:lang**="la">lapis  philosophicus</**foreign**>? |
| **Note** | The global *@xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in [6.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH).This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *@xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages. |

* + 1. <forename>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<forename>** contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element forename {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**roleName**>Ex-President</**roleName**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname**>Bush</**surname**> </**persName**> |

* + 1. <front>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)  [4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text  **transcr:** facsimile |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap head lb milestone note p pb  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure  **linking:** ab  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element front {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  ( ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.pLike.front](#TEI.model.pLike.front) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ),  (  (  (  [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like),  ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) | [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  | (  [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike),  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  ),  ( ( ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) ), ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )? )  )?  ) } |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**epigraph**>   <**quote**>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:   <**q** **xml:lang**="gr">Σίβυλλα τί θέλεις</**q**>; respondebat      illa: <**q** **xml:lang**="gr">ὰποθανεῖν θέλω.</**q**>   </**quote**>  </**epigraph**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>For Ezra Pound <**q** **xml:lang**="it">il miglior fabbro.</**q**>   </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>To our three selves</**p**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="preface">   <**head**>Author's Note</**head**>   <**p**>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons      she has done so inadvertently.      ...</**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |

* + 1. <fw>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fw>** (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [[11.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHSK) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.placement](#TEI.att.placement) | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **bot-center**  **bot-left**  **bot-right**  **margin-right**  **top-center**  **top-left**  **top-right** | | | **type** | classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **catch**  **head**  **pageNum**  **pagenum**  **sig**  **trailer** | | |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element fw {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute place  {  list  {  (  "bot-center"  | "bot-left"  | "bot-right"  | "margin-right"  | "top-center"  | "top-left"  | "top-right"  )+  }  }?,  attribute type  {  "catch" | "head" | "pageNum" | "pagenum" | "sig" | "trailer"  }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**fw** **type**="sig" **place**="bottom">C3</**fw**> |
| **Note** | Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *@rend* attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance. |

* + 1. <g>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<g>** (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [[5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#WD) ] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **D\_inverse**  **Q\_inverse**  **lettre\_fantastique**  **pied\_de\_mouche** | | | **ref** | points to a description of the character or glyph intended.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.gLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said series sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote idno typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation collection condition decoNote dim heraldry institution material provenance repository source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Declaration** | element g {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type  {  "D\_inverse" | "Q\_inverse" | "lettre\_fantastique" | "pied\_de\_mouche"  }?,  attribute ref { [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) }?,  text } |
| **Example** | <**g** **ref**="#ctlig">ct</**g**>  This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier ctlig like the following:  <**glyph** **xml:id**="ctlig"> <!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended --> </**glyph**> |
| **Example** | <**g** **ref**="#per-glyph">per</**g**>  The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier per like the following:  <**glyph** **xml:id**="per-glyph"> <!-- ... --> </**glyph**> |
| **Note** | The name g is short for gaiji, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph. |

* + 1. <gap>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gap>** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [[3.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.edit |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Declaration** | element gap {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.facs.attribute.facs](#TEI.att.global.facs),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute reason { list { [data.word](#TEI.data.word)+ } }?,  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="4" **unit**="chars"  **reason**="illegible"/> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="1" **unit**="essay"  **reason**="sampling"/> |
| **Example** | <**del**>  <**gap** **atLeast**="4" **atMost**="8" **unit**="chars"   **reason**="illegible"/> </**del**> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **extent**="unknown" **unit**="lines"  **reason**="lost"/> |
| **Note** | The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section [11.3.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion. |

* + 1. <genName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<genName>** (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element genName {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Charles</**forename**>  <**genName**>II</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**surname**>Pitt</**surname**>  <**genName**>the Younger</**genName**> </**persName**> |

* + 1. <geogFeat>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geogFeat>** (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.offsetLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element geogFeat {  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**geogName**> The <**geogFeat**>vale</**geogFeat**> of White Horse</**geogName**> |

* + 1. <geogName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geogName>** (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (ref, @key)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **fleuve**  **geo**  **hydro**  **lac**  **mer**  **montagne**  **riviere**  **vallee** | | |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier collation condition decoNote heraldry material msIdentifier provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element geogName {  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  attribute type  {  "fleuve"  | "geo"  | "hydro"  | "lac"  | "mer"  | "montagne"  | "riviere"  | "vallee"  }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**geogName**>  <**geogFeat**>Mount</**geogFeat**>  <**name**>Sinai</**name**> </**geogName**> |

* + 1. <glyph>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<glyph>** (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph. [[5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/D2.html#D25-20) ] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** charDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc graphic note  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** glyphName |
| **Declaration** | element glyph {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  [glyphName](#TEI.glyphName)?,  [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\*,  [charProp](#TEI.charProp)\*,  [mapping](#TEI.mapping)\*,  [figure](#TEI.figure)\*,  [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike)\*,  [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike)\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**glyph** **xml:id**="rstroke">  <**glyphName**>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</**glyphName**>  <**charProp**>   <**localName**>entity</**localName**>   <**value**>rstroke</**value**>  </**charProp**>  <**figure**>   <**graphic** **url**="glyph-rstroke.png"/>  </**figure**> </**glyph**> |

* + 1. <glyphName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<glyphName>** (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names. [[5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/D2.html#D25-20) ] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** glyph |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Declaration** | element glyphName {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  text } |
| **Example** | <**glyphName**>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</**glyphName**> |
| **Note** | For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an Ideographic Description Sequence (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange. |

* + 1. <graphic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<graphic>** indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [[3.9.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.media (@width, @height) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **gaiji:** glyph  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage facsimile fw metamark mod supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Declaration** | element graphic {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.media.attributes](#TEI.att.media),  [att.resourced.attributes](#TEI.att.resourced),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\* } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**graphic** **url**="fig1.png"/>  <**head**>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | The *@mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *@url* attribute. |

* + 1. <handDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<handDesc>** (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript. [[10.7.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph2) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **hands** | specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.count](#TEI.data.count) | | |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** handNote  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element handDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute hands { [data.count](#TEI.data.count) }?,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [handNote](#TEI.handNote)+ ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**handDesc**>  <**handNote** **scope**="major">Written throughout in <**term**>angelicana formata</**term**>.</**handNote**> </**handDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**handDesc** **hands**="2">  <**p**>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise    unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes    ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably    Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand    on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</**p**> </**handDesc**> |

* + 1. <handNote>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<handNote>** (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [[10.7.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** handDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element handNote {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.handFeatures.attributes](#TEI.att.handFeatures),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**handNote** **scope**="sole">  <**p**>Written in insular    phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed    minuscule.</**p**> </**handNote**> |

* + 1. <head>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [[4.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **legende**  **motto**  **titlePage**  **titre** | | |
| **Member of** | model.headLike model.pLike.front |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list listBibl  **drama:** castGroup castList  **figures:** figure table  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element head {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "legende" | "motto" | "titlePage" | "titre" }?,  (  text  | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:  <**div1** **n**="I" **type**="book">  <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</**head**>  <**div2** **type**="section">   <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</**head**>   <**p**>Proposing as I do ...</**p**>   <**p**>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve      years passed.</**p**>   <**trailer**>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</**trailer**>  </**div2**> </**div1**> |
| **Example** | The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:  With a few exceptions, connectives are equally  useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <**list** **rend**="bulleted">  <**head**>Connectives</**head**>  <**item**>above</**item**>  <**item**>accordingly</**item**>  <**item**>across from</**item**>  <**item**>adjacent to</**item**>  <**item**>again</**item**>  <**item**> <!-- ... -->  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Note** | The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section. |

* + 1. <heraldry>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<heraldry>** contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc. [[10.3.8.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#mshera) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element heraldry {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**p**>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms <**heraldry**>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty,    in chief a crescent for difference</**heraldry**> [Cole],  crest, and the legend <**q**>Cole Deum</**q**>.</**p**> |

* + 1. <hi>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [[3.3.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE)  [3.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element hi {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**hi** **rend**="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</**hi**>  that the said <**hi** **rend**="italic">Walter Shandy</**hi**>, merchant,  in consideration of the said intended marriage ... |

* + 1. <history>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<history>** groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part. [[10.8.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#mshy) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** acquisition provenance |
| **Declaration** | element history {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [origin](#TEI.origin)?, [provenance](#TEI.provenance)\*, [acquisition](#TEI.acquisition)? ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**history**>  <**origin**>   <**p**>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth      century.</**p**>  </**origin**>  <**provenance**>   <**p**>Recorded in two medieval      catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and      1405.</**p**>  </**provenance**>  <**provenance**>   <**p**>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)      and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)      according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</**p**>  </**provenance**>  <**acquisition**>   <**p**>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by      Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</**p**>  </**acquisition**> </**history**> |

* + 1. <hyphenation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hyphenation>** summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [[2.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element hyphenation {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |
| **Example** | <**hyphenation** **eol**="some">  <**p**>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</**p**> </**hyphenation**> |

* + 1. <idno>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [[2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)  [2.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)  [3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **cote**  **inventaire**  **ouvrage** | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label monogr name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote idno language publicationStmt rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier collation condition decoNote heraldry material msIdentifier provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno |
| **Declaration** | element idno {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute type { "cote" | "inventaire" | "ouvrage" }?,  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**idno** **type**="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0143-3385</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="DOI">http://dx.doi.org/10.1000/123</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="Wing">C695</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="oldCat">  <**g** **ref**="#sym"/>345 </**idno**>  In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym. |
| **Note** | <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *@type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI. |

* + 1. <imprimatur>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<imprimatur>** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element imprimatur {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**imprimatur**>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</**imprimatur**> |

* + 1. <imprint>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<imprint>** groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** monogr |
| **May contain** | **core:** biblScope cb date gap lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt  **figures:** figure  **header:** catRef  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element imprint {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  ( [classCode](#TEI.classCode) | [catRef](#TEI.catRef) )\*,  (  ( ( [model.imprintPart](#TEI.model.imprintPart) ) | ( [model.dateLike](#TEI.model.dateLike) ) ),  [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt)\*,  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*  )+  ) } |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |

* + 1. <institution>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<institution>** contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution. [[10.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msid) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (ref, @key) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** altIdentifier msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g |
| **Declaration** | element institution {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.xtext](#TEI.macro.xtext)} |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>  <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>  <**repository**>Bodleian Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS. Bodley 406</**idno**> </**msIdentifier**> |

* + 1. <interpretation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<interpretation>** describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription. [[2.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element interpretation {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |
| **Example** | <**interpretation**>  <**p**>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not    been checked</**p**> </**interpretation**> |

* + 1. <item>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<item>** contains one component of a list. [[3.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)  [2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element item {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**head**>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</**head**>  <**item** **n**="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.6">The priest Cato.</**item**>  <**item**> ...</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Note** | May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *@n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *@n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *@n*. |

* + 1. <keywords>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [[2.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **core:** list term |
| **Declaration** | element keywords {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute scheme { [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) }?,  ( [term](#TEI.term)+ | [list](#TEI.list) ) } |
| **Example** | <**keywords** **scheme**="http://classificationweb.net">  <**term**>Babbage, Charles</**term**>  <**term**>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Example** | <**keywords**>  <**term**>Fermented beverages</**term**>  <**term**>Central Andes</**term**>  <**term**>Schinus molle</**term**>  <**term**>Molle beer</**term**>  <**term**>Indigenous peoples</**term**>  <**term**>Ethnography</**term**>  <**term**>Archaeology</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Note** | Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *@scheme* attribute. |

* + 1. <l>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [[3.12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE)  [3.12.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV)  [7.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.fragmentable (@part) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.lLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** head item lg note q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** change handNote typeNote  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textstructure:** body div epigraph trailer  **transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element l {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.att.fragmentable),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**l** **met**="x/x/x/x/x/" **real**="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</**l**> |

* + 1. <label>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<label>** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [[3.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc head hi item l lg list note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied surface |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element label {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *@xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:  <**list** **type**="gloss" **xml:lang**="enm">  <**head** **xml:lang**="en">Vocabulary</**head**>  <**headLabel** **xml:lang**="en">Middle English</**headLabel**>  <**headItem** **xml:lang**="en">New English</**headItem**>  <**label**>nu</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">now</**item**>  <**label**>lhude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">loudly</**item**>  <**label**>bloweth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">blooms</**item**>  <**label**>med</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">meadow</**item**>  <**label**>wude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">wood</**item**>  <**label**>awe</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">ewe</**item**>  <**label**>lhouth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">lows</**item**>  <**label**>sterteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <**cit**>    <**ref**>Chaucer, K.T.644</**ref**>    <**quote**>a courser, <**term**>sterting</**term**>as the fyr</**quote**>   </**cit**>  </**item**>  <**label**>verteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="la">pedit</**item**>  <**label**>murie</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">merrily</**item**>  <**label**>swik</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">cease</**item**>  <**label**>naver</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">never</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *@n* attribute on the <item> element:  I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred  in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. <**list** **rend**="runon" **type**="ordered">  <**label**>(1)</**label**>  <**item**>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</**item**>  <**label**>(2) </**label**>  <**item**>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the    printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:  <**list** **type**="gloss">  <**label**>March 1757.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</**item**>  <**label**>March 8th.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</**item**>  <**label**>June.</**label**>  <**item**>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <**quote** **xml:lang**="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus      amori.</**quote**>  </**item**>  <**label**>August.</**label**>  <**item**>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</**item**> </**list**>  Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice. |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.  <**p**>[...] <**lb**/>&amp; n’entrer en mauuais &amp; mal-heu- <**lb**/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente- <**lb**/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt <**lb**/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit <**label** **place**="margin">Puiſſance maritale    entre les Romains.</**label**>  <**lb**/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma- <**lb**/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs <**lb**/> la puiſſance du mary, s’il n’eſt eſcla- <**lb**/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce <**lb**/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en- <**lb**/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance  [...]</**p**>  In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label. |

* + 1. <langUsage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [[2.4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41)  [2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** language |
| **Declaration** | element langUsage {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [language](#TEI.language)+ } |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="fr-CA" **usage**="60">Québecois</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-CA" **usage**="20">Canadian business English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-GB" **usage**="20">British English</**language**> </**langUsage**> |

* + 1. <language>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [[2.4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in [BCP 47](http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47) which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *@xml:lang* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [data.language](#TEI.data.language) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** langUsage |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address cb choice date expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note pb ref term title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** fw metamark space subst |
| **Declaration** | element language {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute ident { [data.language](#TEI.data.language) },  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="en-US" **usage**="75">modern American English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="i-az-Arab" **usage**="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="x-lap" **usage**="05">Pig Latin</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Note** | Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element. |

* + 1. <lb/>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lb/>** (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [[3.10.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)  [7.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Declaration** | element lb {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  empty } |
| **Example** | This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:  <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *@break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.  <**titlePart**>  <**lb**/>With Additions, ne-<**lb** **break**="no"/>ver before Printed. </**titlePart**> |
| **Note** | By convention, <lb/> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *@n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb/> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *@break*, *@ed*, or *@edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |

* + 1. <lem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lem>** (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation. [[12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) ] | |
| **Module** | textcrit |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **textcrit:** app |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element lem {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.rdgPart](#TEI.model.rdgPart) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**app**>  <**lem** **wit**="#El #Hg">Experience</**lem**>  <**rdg** **wit**="#La" **type**="substantive">Experiment</**rdg**>  <**rdg** **wit**="#Ra2" **type**="substantive">Eryment</**rdg**> </**app**> |
| **Note** | The term lemma is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text). |

* + 1. <lg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lg>** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [[3.12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE)  [3.12.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV)  [7.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.divLike (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **antistrophe**  **chanson**  **couplet**  **devise**  **dicton**  **distique**  **dizain**  **douzain**  **enigme**  **epitaphe**  **epode**  **huitain**  **hymne**  **poeme**  **pose**  **quatrain**  **rondeau**  **sonnet**  **stance**  **strophe**  **tercet** | | | **subtype** | provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **distique**  **enigme**  **quatrain** | | |
| **Member of** | macro.paraContent model.divPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** change handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb desc gap head l label lb lg milestone note pb stage  **figures:** figure  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate epigraph opener salute signed trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element lg {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.divLike.attributes](#TEI.att.divLike),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  attribute type  {  "antistrophe"  | "chanson"  | "couplet"  | "devise"  | "dicton"  | "distique"  | "dizain"  | "douzain"  | "enigme"  | "epitaphe"  | "epode"  | "huitain"  | "hymne"  | "poeme"  | "pose"  | "quatrain"  | "rondeau"  | "sonnet"  | "stance"  | "strophe"  | "tercet"  }?,  attribute subtype { "distique" | "enigme" | "quatrain" }?,  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  ( [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [lg](#TEI.lg) ),  ( [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) )\*,  ( ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )  >>  tei:constraintSpec  [  scheme = "isoschematron"  ident = "atleast1oflggapl"  "An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element."  ] } |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert> |
| **Example** | <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>Let me be my own fool</**l**>  <**l**>of my own making, the sum of it</**l**> </**lg**> <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>is equivocal.</**l**>  <**l**>One says of the drunken farmer:</**l**> </**lg**> <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>leave him lay off it. And this is</**l**>  <**l**>the explanation.</**l**> </**lg**> |
| **Note** | contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading. |

* + 1. <list>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<list>** contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [[3.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | describes the nature of the items in the list.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Champfleury**  **gloss**  **glossaire**  **simple**  **sommaire** | | **Note** | Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *@type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *@rend* or *@style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *@type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list. | | **Note** | The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote keywords rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap head item label lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate epigraph opener salute signed trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element list {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute type  {  "Champfleury" | "gloss" | "glossaire" | "simple" | "sommaire"  }?,  (  ( ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) ) | ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) ) )\*,  (  ( [item](#TEI.item), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  | (  [headLabel](#TEI.headLabel)?,  [headItem](#TEI.headItem)?,  ( [label](#TEI.label), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, [item](#TEI.item), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  )  ),  ( ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**item**>a butcher</**item**>  <**item**>a baker</**item**>  <**item**>a candlestick maker, with <**list** **rend**="bulleted">    <**item**>rings on his fingers</**item**>    <**item**>bells on his toes</**item**>   </**list**>  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **type**="syllogism" **rend**="bulleted">  <**item**>All Cretans are liars.</**item**>  <**item**>Epimenides is a Cretan.</**item**>  <**item**>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **type**="litany" **rend**="simple">  <**item**>God save us from drought.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from pestilence.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from wickedness in high places.</**item**>  <**item**>Praise be to God.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):  <**div1** **type**="section">  <**head**>Athelstan's Ordinance</**head**>  <**list** **rend**="numbered">   <**item** **n**="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over      eightpence. <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his          wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him          that he will desist for ever.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          or to bring him back there.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting. <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him          down as a thief.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds      his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and      120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as      often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had      refused him justice. <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</**item**>  </**list**> </**div1**>  Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired. |
| **Example** | <**p**>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they  confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards  inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy  Cross. <**list** **rend**="simple">   <**item**>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with      the sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of      the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>  </**list**> </**p**> |
| **Note** | May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings. |

* + 1. <listBibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [[3.11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY)  [2.2.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **refbiblio** | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition sourceDesc taxonomy typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additional additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **namesdates:** person  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb head lb listBibl milestone pb  **msdescription:** msDesc  **transcr:** fw |
| **Declaration** | element listBibl {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute type { "refbiblio" }?,  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.milestoneLike](#TEI.model.milestoneLike) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**head**>Works consulted</**head**>  <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)  </**bibl**>  <**biblStruct**>   <**analytic**>    <**title**>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>   </**analytic**>   <**monogr**>    <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>    <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>    <**imprint**>     <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>     <**date**>1968</**date**>    </**imprint**>   </**monogr**>  </**biblStruct**> </**listBibl**> |

* + 1. <listPerson>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE)  [15.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH)  [2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition sourceDesc typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **namesdates:** listPerson  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** head  **namesdates:** listPerson person |
| **Declaration** | element listPerson {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.personLike](#TEI.model.personLike) | [listPerson](#TEI.listPerson) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**listPerson** **type**="respondents">  <**personGrp** **xml:id**="PXXX"/>  <**person** **xml:id**="P1234" **sex**="2" **age**="mid"/>  <**person** **xml:id**="P4332" **sex**="1" **age**="mid"/>  <**listRelation**>   <**relation** **type**="personal" **name**="spouse"    **mutual**="#P1234 #P4332"/>  </**listRelation**> </**listPerson**> |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient. |

* + 1. <material>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<material>** contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed. [[10.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msmat) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element material {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**physDesc**>  <**p**>   <**material**>Parchment</**material**> leaves with a  <**material**>sharkskin</**material**> binding.</**p**> </**physDesc**> |
| **Note** | The *@ref* attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally. |

* + 1. <metamark>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<metamark>** contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document. [[11.3.4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-meta) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.spanning (@spanTo) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.placement](#TEI.att.placement) | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **bottom**  **top** | | | **target** | identifies one or more elements to which the function indicated by the metamark applies.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.global |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element metamark {  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute place { list { ( "bottom" | "top" )+ } }?,  attribute target { list { [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)+ } }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <milestone/>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<milestone/>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [[3.10.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.milestoneUnit](#TEI.att.milestoneUnit) | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **book**  **speaker**  **titlePage** | | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **allegorie**  **embleme** | | |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Declaration** | element milestone {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  attribute unit { "book" | "speaker" | "titlePage" },  attribute type { "allegorie" | "embleme" }?,  empty } |
| **Example** | <**milestone** **n**="23" **ed**="La" **unit**="Dreissiger"/>  ... <**milestone** **n**="24" **ed**="AV" **unit**="verse"/> ... |
| **Note** | For this element, the global *@n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant. |

* + 1. <mod>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<mod>** represents any kind of modification identified within a single document. [[11.3.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-mod) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.spanning (@spanTo) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) [att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional) (seq, @hand) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element mod {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.transcriptional.attribute.hand](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**mod** **type**="subst">  <**add**>pleasing</**add**>  <**del**>agreable</**del**> </**mod**> |

* + 1. <monogr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<monogr>** (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [[3.11.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** author biblScope editor imprint note ref respStmt title  **header:** authority availability edition extent idno |
| **Declaration** | element monogr {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  (  (  ( [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [meeting](#TEI.meeting) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) ),  ( [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [meeting](#TEI.meeting) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*,  [title](#TEI.title)+,  ( [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*  )  | (  ( [title](#TEI.title) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) )+,  ( [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [meeting](#TEI.meeting) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*  )  | ( [authority](#TEI.authority), [idno](#TEI.idno) )  )?,  [availability](#TEI.availability)\*,  [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike)\*,  (  [edition](#TEI.edition),  ( [idno](#TEI.idno) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [sponsor](#TEI.sponsor) | [funder](#TEI.funder) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*  )\*,  [imprint](#TEI.imprint),  ( [imprint](#TEI.imprint) | [extent](#TEI.extent) | [biblScope](#TEI.biblScope) )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**analytic**>   <**author**>Chesnutt, David</**author**>   <**title**>Historical Editions in the States</**title**>  </**analytic**>  <**monogr**>   <**title** **level**="j">Computers and the Humanities</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**date** **when**="1991-12">(December, 1991):</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**biblScope**>25.6</**biblScope**>   <**biblScope** **unit**="page" **from**="377" **to**="380">377–380</**biblScope**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct** **type**="book">  <**monogr**>   <**author**>    <**persName**>     <**forename**>Leo Joachim</**forename**>     <**surname**>Frachtenberg</**surname**>    </**persName**>   </**author**>   <**title** **type**="main" **level**="m">Lower Umpqua Texts</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**pubPlace**>New York</**pubPlace**>    <**publisher**>Columbia University Press</**publisher**>    <**date**>1914</**date**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**>  <**series**>   <**title** **type**="main" **level**="s">Columbia University Contributions to      Anthropology</**title**>   <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">4</**biblScope**>  </**series**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Note** | May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order.The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item. |

* + 1. <msContents>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msContents>** (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [[10.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msco) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.msExcerpt (@defective) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **textstructure:** titlePage |
| **Declaration** | element msContents {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.msExcerpt.attributes](#TEI.att.msExcerpt),  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [textLang](#TEI.textLang)?, [titlePage](#TEI.titlePage)?, ( [msItem](#TEI.msItem) | [msItemStruct](#TEI.msItemStruct) )\* )  ) } |
| **Example** | <**msContents** **class**="#sermons">  <**p**>A collection of Lollard sermons</**p**> </**msContents**> |
| **Example** | <**msContents**>  <**msItem** **n**="1">   <**locus**>fols. 5r-7v</**locus**>   <**title**>An ABC</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>239</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="2">   <**locus**>fols. 7v-8v</**locus**>   <**title** **xml:lang**="frm">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>3747</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="3">   <**locus**>fol. 8v</**locus**>   <**title**>Truth</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>809</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="4">   <**locus**>fols. 8v-10v</**locus**>   <**title**>Birds Praise of Love</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>1506</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="5">   <**locus**>fols. 10v-11v</**locus**>   <**title** **xml:lang**="la">De amico ad amicam</**title**>   <**title** **xml:lang**="la">Responcio</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>16 &amp; 19</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="6">   <**locus**>fols. 14r-126v</**locus**>   <**title**>Troilus and Criseyde</**title**>   <**note**>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation throughout</**note**>  </**msItem**> </**msContents**> |
| **Note** | Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema. |

* + 1. <msDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msDesc>** (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object. [[10.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msov) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition sourceDesc taxonomy typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **namesdates:** person  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** head p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** additional history msContents msIdentifier physDesc |
| **Declaration** | element msDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  [msIdentifier](#TEI.msIdentifier),  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  | ( [msContents](#TEI.msContents)?, [physDesc](#TEI.physDesc)?, [history](#TEI.history)?, [additional](#TEI.additional)?, [msPart](#TEI.msPart)\* )  )  ) } |
| **Example** | <**msDesc**>  <**msIdentifier**>   <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>   <**repository**>Bodleian Library</**repository**>   <**idno** **type**="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</**idno**>  </**msIdentifier**>  <**msContents**>   <**msItem**>    <**author**>Geoffrey Chaucer</**author**>    <**title**>The Canterbury Tales</**title**>   </**msItem**>  </**msContents**>  <**physDesc**>   <**objectDesc**>    <**p**>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx        28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</**p**>    <**p**>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</**p**>    <**p**>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44        folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the        remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</**p**>   </**objectDesc**>  </**physDesc**> </**msDesc**> |

* + 1. <msIdentifier>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msIdentifier>** (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described. [[10.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msid) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno  **msdescription:** altIdentifier collection institution repository  **namesdates:** country geogName placeName settlement |
| **Declaration** | element msIdentifier {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  (  [model.placeNamePart\_sequenceOptional](#TEI.model.placeNamePart),  [institution](#TEI.institution)?,  [repository](#TEI.repository)?,  [collection](#TEI.collection)\*,  [idno](#TEI.idno)?  ),  ( [msName](#TEI.msName) | [altIdentifier](#TEI.altIdentifier) )\*  )  >>  tei:constraintSpec  [  scheme = "isoschematron"  ident = "msId\_minimal"  "An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location of some type, or a manuscript name"  ] } |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(\*[1])='idno' or local-name(\*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location of some type, or a manuscript name</s:report> |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>San Marino</**settlement**>  <**repository**>Huntington Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS.El.26.C.9</**idno**> </**msIdentifier**> |

* + 1. <name>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.5.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (ref, @key) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **allegorie**  **nationality**  **transcription** | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element name {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute type { "allegorie" | "nationality" | "transcription" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**name** **type**="person">Thomas Hoccleve</**name**> <**name** **type**="place">Villingaholt</**name**> <**name** **type**="org">Vetus Latina Institut</**name**> <**name** **type**="person" **ref**="#HOC001">Occleve</**name**> |
| **Note** | Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included. |

* + 1. <nameLink>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element nameLink {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>van der</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Tronck</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Alfred</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>de</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Musset</**surname**> </**persName**> |

* + 1. <normalization>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<normalization>** indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [[2.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element normalization {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**normalization** **method**="markup">   <**p**>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to modern      20th century typographical practice, the <**gi**>choice</**gi**> element has been used to      enclose <**gi**>orig</**gi**> and <**gi**>reg</**gi**> elements giving the original and new values      respectively. ... </**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**normalization** **method**="silent">   <**p**>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero spaces;      spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**normalization** **source**="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">   <**p**>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th      Collegiate dictionary.</**p**>  </**normalization**> </**editorialDecl**> |

* + 1. <note>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<note>** contains a note or annotation. [[3.8.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONONO)  [2.2.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27)  [3.11.2.8.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICON)  [9.3.5.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPNO) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.responsibility (cert, @resp)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.placement](#TEI.att.placement) | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **margin-left**  **margin-right** | | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **adresse\_typographique** | | |
| **Member of** | model.noteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list monogr name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **gaiji:** glyph  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language notesStmt typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions adminInfo altIdentifier collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element note {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  attribute place { list { ( "margin-left" | "margin-right" )+ } }?,  attribute type { "adresse\_typographique" }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":  And yet it is not only  in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  painterly <**note** **place**="bottom" **type**="gloss"  **resp**="#MDMH">  <**term** **xml:lang**="de">Malerisch</**term**>. This word has, in the German, two  distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,  the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid  confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <**mentioned**>picturesque</**mentioned**> and <**mentioned**>painterly</**mentioned**> respectively. </**note**> style of the  Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this  psychological significance.  For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="MDMH">  <**resp**>translation from German to English</**resp**>  <**name**>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | The global *@n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:  Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the  family during the second half of the eleventh century, <**note** **n**="126" **anchored**="true"> The  alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to  Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </**note**> is well known from Geniza documents  published by Jacob Mann.  However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers. |

* + 1. <notesStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<notesStmt>** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [[2.2.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27)  [2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** note relatedItem |
| **Declaration** | element notesStmt {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [relatedItem](#TEI.relatedItem) )+ } |
| **Example** | <**notesStmt**>  <**note**>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</**note**>  <**note**>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</**note**> </**notesStmt**> |
| **Note** | Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note. |

* + 1. <objectDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<objectDesc>** contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [[10.7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph1) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** supportDesc |
| **Declaration** | element objectDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [supportDesc](#TEI.supportDesc)?, [layoutDesc](#TEI.layoutDesc)? ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**objectDesc** **form**="codex">  <**supportDesc** **material**="mixed">   <**p**>Early modern   <**material**>parchment</**material**> and   <**material**>paper</**material**>.</**p**>  </**supportDesc**>  <**layoutDesc**>   <**layout** **ruledLines**="25 32"/>  </**layoutDesc**> </**objectDesc**> |

* + 1. <offset>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<offset>** marks that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.offsetLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element offset {  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**placeName** **key**="NRPA1">  <**offset**>50 metres below the summit of</**offset**>  <**geogName**>   <**geogFeat**>Mount</**geogFeat**>   <**name**>Sinai</**name**>  </**geogName**> </**placeName**> |

* + 1. <opener>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [[4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **textstructure:** byline dateline epigraph salute signed  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element opener {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [argument](#TEI.argument) | [byline](#TEI.byline) | [dateline](#TEI.dateline) | [epigraph](#TEI.epigraph) | [salute](#TEI.salute) | [signed](#TEI.signed) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</**dateline**> </**opener**> |
| **Example** | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**name** **type**="place">Great Marlborough Street</**name**>   <**date**>November 11, 1848</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>My dear Sir,</**salute**> </**opener**> <**p**>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from  earlier enquiring...</**p**> |

* + 1. <orgName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [[13.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.canonical (ref, @key)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **communaute**  **peuple** | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element orgName {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  attribute type { "communaute" | "peuple" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <**orgName** **key**="PAS1" **type**="voluntary">  <**placeName** **key**="PEN">Pennsyla.</**placeName**> Abolition Society </**orgName**>.... |

* + 1. <orig>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [[3.4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG)  [12.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element orig {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:  <**l**>But this will be a <**orig**>meere</**orig**> confusion</**l**> <**l**>And hardly shall we all be <**orig**>vnderstoode</**orig**> </**l**> |
| **Example** | More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:  <**l**>But this will be a <**choice**>   <**orig**>meere</**orig**>   <**reg**>mere</**reg**>  </**choice**> confusion</**l**> <**l**>And hardly shall we all be <**choice**>   <**orig**>vnderstoode</**orig**>   <**reg**>understood</**reg**>  </**choice**> </**l**> |

* + 1. <p>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA)  [7.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q quote said sp stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** availability change correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation normalization projectDesc publicationStmt sourceDesc typeNote  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition decoDesc decoNote handDesc history msContents msDesc objectDesc physDesc provenance recordHist source support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc  **namesdates:** person  **textstructure:** back body div epigraph front  **transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element p {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.att.fragmentable),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**p**>Hallgerd was outside. <**q**>There is blood on your axe,</**q**> she said. <**q**>What have you    done?</**q**> </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</**q**> replied Thjostolf. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</**q**> she said. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Yes,</**q**> said Thjostolf. <**q**>And now you must think up some plan for me.</**q**> </**p**> |

* + 1. <pb/>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pb/>** (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document. [[3.10.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod subst supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Declaration** | element pb {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.facs.attribute.facs](#TEI.att.global.facs),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  empty } |
| **Example** | Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.  <**p**> ... <**pb** **n**="145" **ed**="ed2"/> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <**pb** **n**="283" **ed**="ed1"/> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </**p**> |
| **Example** | A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *@facs* attribute  <**body**>  <**pb** **n**="1" **facs**="page1.png"/> <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is encoded here -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**>  <**pb** **n**="2" **facs**="page2.png"/> <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**> </**body**> |
| **Note** | A <pb/> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *@n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb/> element itself.The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not. |

* + 1. <pc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pc>** (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [[17.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC) ] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.segLike (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear  **gaiji:** g  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage mod subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element pc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [c](#TEI.c) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**phr**>  <**w**>do</**w**>  <**w**>you</**w**>  <**w**>understand</**w**>  <**pc** **type**="interrogative">?</**pc**> </**phr**> |

* + 1. <persName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (cert, @resp) att.canonical (ref, @key)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **full** | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.personal](#TEI.att.personal) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **yes** [Default] | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element persName {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  attribute full { "yes" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Edward</**forename**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname** **type**="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</**surname**>, <**roleName**>Baron Lytton of  <**placeName**>Knebworth</**placeName**>  </**roleName**> </**persName**> |

* + 1. <person>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<person>** provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE)  [15.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPerson |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb gap lb listBibl milestone note p pb  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** persName  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element person {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personPart](#TEI.model.personPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ) } |
| **Example** | <**person** **sex**="F" **age**="adult">  <**p**>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic    status B2.</**p**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **sex**="intersex" **role**="god"  **age**="immortal">  <**persName**>Hermaphroditos</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="grc">Ἑρμαφρόδιτος</**persName**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **xml:id**="Ovi01" **sex**="1" **role**="poet">  <**persName** **xml:lang**="en">Ovid</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</**persName**>  <**birth** **when**="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Sulmona</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="IT">Italy</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**birth**>  <**death** **notBefore**="0017" **notAfter**="0018">17 or 18 AD <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Tomis (Constanta)</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="RO">Romania</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**death**> </**person**> |
| **Note** | May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class. |

* + 1. <physDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<physDesc>** (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [[10.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc objectDesc typeDesc |
| **Declaration** | element physDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\*, ( [model.physDescPart\_sequenceOptional](#TEI.model.physDescPart) ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**physDesc**>  <**objectDesc** **form**="codex">   <**supportDesc** **material**="perg">    <**support**>Parchment.</**support**>    <**extent**>i + 55 leaves    <**dimensions** **scope**="all" **type**="leaf"      **unit**="inch">      <**height**>7¼</**height**>      <**width**>5⅜</**width**>     </**dimensions**>    </**extent**>   </**supportDesc**>   <**layoutDesc**>    <**layout** **columns**="2">In double columns.</**layout**>   </**layoutDesc**>  </**objectDesc**>  <**handDesc**>   <**p**>Written in more than one hand.</**p**>  </**handDesc**>  <**decoDesc**>   <**p**>With a few coloured capitals.</**p**>  </**decoDesc**> </**physDesc**> |

* + 1. <placeName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<placeName>** contains an absolute or relative place name. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (ref, @key)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **batiment**  **continent**  **domaine**  **empire**  **enseigne**  **pays**  **region**  **rue**  **vile**  **ville** | | |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier collation condition decoNote heraldry material msIdentifier provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element placeName {  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  attribute type  {  "batiment"  | "continent"  | "domaine"  | "empire"  | "enseigne"  | "pays"  | "region"  | "rue"  | "vile"  | "ville"  }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement**>Rochester</**settlement**>  <**region**>New York</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**geogName**>Arrochar Alps</**geogName**>  <**region**>Argylshire</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**measure**>10 miles</**measure**>  <**offset**>Northeast of</**offset**>  <**settlement**>Attica</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |

* + 1. <profileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [[2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)  [2.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** langUsage textClass |
| **Declaration** | element profileDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.profileDescPart](#TEI.model.profileDescPart)\* ) } |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**langUsage**>   <**language** **ident**="fr">French</**language**>  </**langUsage**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **type**="entertain" **degree**="high"/>   <**purpose** **type**="inform" **degree**="medium"/>  </**textDesc**>  <**settingDesc**>   <**setting**>    <**name**>Paris, France</**name**>    <**time**>Late 19th century</**time**>   </**setting**>  </**settingDesc**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Note** | Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc>.In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first. |

* + 1. <projectDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [[2.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD51)  [2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)  [15.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element projectDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |
| **Example** | <**projectDesc**>  <**p**>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</**p**> </**projectDesc**> |

* + 1. <provenance>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<provenance>** contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition. [[10.8.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#mshy) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** history |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element provenance {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**provenance**>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.</**provenance**> <**provenance**>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</**provenance**> |

* + 1. <pubPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (ref, @key)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.naming | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **impression**  **pubPlace**  **vente** | | |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt  **textstructure:** docImprint |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element pubPlace {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  attribute role { list { ( "impression" | "pubPlace" | "vente" )+ } }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Oxford University Press</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1989</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |

* + 1. <publicationStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [[2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)  [2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p pubPlace publisher  **header:** authority availability idno  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element publicationStmt {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  (  ( [model.publicationStmtPart.agency](#TEI.model.publicationStmtPart.agency) ),  [model.publicationStmtPart.detail](#TEI.model.publicationStmtPart.detail)\*  )+  | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  ) } |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>C. Muquardt </**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</**pubPlace**>  <**date** **when**="1846"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Chadwyck Healey</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Cambridge</**pubPlace**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Available under licence only</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**date** **when**="1992">1992</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |

* + 1. <publisher>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)  [2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt  **textstructure:** docImprint |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element publisher {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Note** | Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page |

* + 1. <q>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [[3.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **proverbe** | | |
| **Member of** | model.qLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element q {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "proverbe" }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | It is spelled <**q**>Tübingen</**q**> — to enter the  letter <**q**>u</**q**> with an umlaut hold down the <**q**>option</**q**> key and press  <**q**>0 0 f c</**q**> |
| **Note** | May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *@rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks. |

* + 1. <quote>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<quote>** (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [[3.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)  [4.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.msExcerpt (@defective) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **proverbe** | | |
| **Member of** | model.quoteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element quote {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.msExcerpt.attributes](#TEI.att.msExcerpt),  attribute type { "proverbe" }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the  work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his  slogan, <**quote**>You shall know a word by the company it  keeps</**quote**> <**ref**>(Firth, 1957)</**ref**> |
| **Note** | If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element. |

* + 1. <rdg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<rdg>** (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation. [[12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) ] | |
| **Module** | textcrit |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.witnessed (@wit) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.rdgLike |
| **Contained by** | **textcrit:** app |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element rdg {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.witnessed.attributes](#TEI.att.witnessed),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.rdgPart](#TEI.model.rdgPart) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**rdg** **wit**="#Ra2">Eryment</**rdg**> |

* + 1. <recordHist>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<recordHist>** (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself. [[10.9.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msadad) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** adminInfo |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** change  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** source |
| **Declaration** | element recordHist {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [source](#TEI.source), [change](#TEI.change)\* ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**recordHist**>  <**source**>   <**p**>Derived from <**ref** **target**="#IMEV">IMEV 123</**ref**> with additional research      by P.M.W.Robinson</**p**>  </**source**>  <**change** **when**="1999-06-23">   <**name**>LDB</**name**> (editor)    checked examples against DTD version 3.6  </**change**> </**recordHist**> |

* + 1. <ref>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [[3.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)  [16.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.pointing (@target) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Gallica**  **Gallica1**  **Gallica2**  **Gallica3**  **Gallica4** | | |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label monogr name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp said series sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element ref {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.internetMedia.attributes](#TEI.att.internetMedia),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.att.cReferencing),  attribute type  {  "Gallica" | "Gallica1" | "Gallica2" | "Gallica3" | "Gallica4"  }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) >>  tei:constraintSpec  [  scheme = "isoschematron"  ident = "refAtts"  """Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on """  ] } |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report> |
| **Example** | See especially <**ref** **target**="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second  sentence</**ref**> |
| **Example** | See also <**ref** **target**="#locution">s.v. <**term**>locution</**term**> </**ref**>. |
| **Note** | The *@target* and *@cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |

* + 1. <reg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [[3.4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG)  [12.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (cert, @resp) att.source (@source) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element reg {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  [att.source.attribute.source](#TEI.att.source),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:  <**q**>Please <**reg**>knock</**reg**> if an <**reg**>answer</**reg**> is <**reg**>required</**reg**> </**q**> |
| **Example** | It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:  <**q**>Please <**choice**>   <**reg** **resp**="#LB">knock</**reg**>   <**orig**>cnk</**orig**>  </**choice**> if an <**choice**>   <**reg**>answer</**reg**>   <**orig**>nsr</**orig**>  </**choice**> is <**choice**>   <**reg**>required</**reg**>   <**orig**>reqd</**orig**>  </**choice**> </**q**> |

* + 1. <relatedItem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [[3.11.2.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBIRI) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **original** | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct  **header:** notesStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct listBibl ref  **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **Declaration** | element relatedItem {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "original" }?,  ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) )?  >>  tei:constraintSpec  [  ident = "targetorcontent1"  scheme = "isoschematron"  " If the @target attribute on "  " is used, the relatedItem element must be empty"  " "  """A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item"""  ] } |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="@target and count( child::\* ) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::\*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert> |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**monogr**>   <**author**>Shirley, James</**author**>   <**title** **type**="main">The gentlemen of Venice</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**pubPlace**>New York</**pubPlace**>    <**publisher**>Readex Microprint</**publisher**>    <**date**>1953</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**extent**>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</**extent**>  </**monogr**>  <**series**>   <**title**>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</**title**>  </**series**>  <**relatedItem** **type**="otherForm">   <**biblStruct**>    <**monogr**>     <**author**>Shirley, James</**author**>     <**title** **type**="main">The gentlemen of Venice</**title**>     <**title** **type**="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury          Court by Her Majesties servants</**title**>     <**imprint**>      <**pubPlace**>London</**pubPlace**>      <**publisher**>H. Moseley</**publisher**>      <**date**>1655</**date**>     </**imprint**>     <**extent**>78 p.</**extent**>    </**monogr**>   </**biblStruct**>  </**relatedItem**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Note** | If the *@target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be empty. |

* + 1. <rendition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<rendition>** supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [[2.3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** tagsDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc expan foreign hi label list listBibl name q quote ref said stage term title  **drama:** castList  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** subst |
| **Declaration** | element rendition {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.styleDef.attributes](#TEI.att.styleDef),  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="r-center" **scheme**="css">text-align: center;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="r-small" **scheme**="css">font-size: small;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="r-large" **scheme**="css">font-size: large;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="initcaps"   **scope**="first-letter" **scheme**="css">font-size: xx-large</**rendition**> </**tagsDecl**> |
| **Note** | The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold a description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS. |

* + 1. <repository>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<repository>** contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [[10.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msid) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (ref, @key) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** altIdentifier msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g |
| **Declaration** | element repository {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.key](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.xtext](#TEI.macro.xtext)} |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>  <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>  <**repository**>Bodleian Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS. Bodley 406</**idno**> </**msIdentifier**> |

* + 1. <resp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [[3.11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)  [2.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)  [2.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22)  [2.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address cb choice date expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note pb ref term title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **transcr:** fw metamark space subst |
| **Declaration** | element resp {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp** **key**="com">compiler</**resp**>  <**name**>Edward Child</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* or *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using *@ref*) or indirectly (using *@key*) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage. |

* + 1. <respStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)  [2.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)  [2.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22)  [2.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint monogr series  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** name resp  **namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Declaration** | element respStmt {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( ( [resp](#TEI.resp)+, [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent)+ ) | ( [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent)+, [resp](#TEI.resp)+ ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>transcribed from original ms</**resp**>  <**persName**>Claus Huitfeldt</**persName**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>converted to XML encoding</**resp**>  <**name**>Alan Morrison</**name**> </**respStmt**> |

* + 1. <revisionDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [[2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)  [2.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.docStatus (@status) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list  **header:** change |
| **Declaration** | element revisionDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  ( [list](#TEI.list) | [listChange](#TEI.listChange) | [change](#TEI.change)+ ) } |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="embargoed">  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Note** | If present on this element, the *@status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list. |

* + 1. <role>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<role>** contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [[7.1.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRCAST) ] | |
| **Module** | drama |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.castItemPart |
| **Contained by** | **drama:** castItem |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element role {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**role** **xml:id**="jt">Joan Trash</**role**> <**roleDesc**>A Ginger-bread-woman</**roleDesc**> |
| **Note** | It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by *@who* attributes on many other elements. |

* + 1. <roleDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<roleDesc>** (role description) describes a character's role in a drama. [[7.1.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRCAST) ] | |
| **Module** | drama |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.castItemPart |
| **Contained by** | **drama:** castGroup castItem |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element roleDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**roleDesc**>gentlemen of leisure</**roleDesc**> |

* + 1. <roleName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<roleName>** contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **fonction**  **honorifique**  **nobiliaire**  **religieux** | | |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element roleName {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "fonction" | "honorifique" | "nobiliaire" | "religieux" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>William</**forename**>  <**surname**>Poulteny</**surname**>  <**roleName**>Earl of Bath</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Note** | A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder. |

* + 1. <row>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<row>** contains one row of a table. [[14.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1) ] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) [att.tableDecoration](#TEI.att.tableDecoration) (role, @cols)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.tableDecoration](#TEI.att.tableDecoration) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **data** [Default]  **label** | | |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** table |
| **May contain** | **figures:** cell |
| **Declaration** | element row {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols](#TEI.att.tableDecoration),  attribute role { "data" | "label" }?,  [cell](#TEI.cell)+ } |
| **Example** | <**row** **role**="data">  <**cell** **role**="label">Classics</**cell**>  <**cell**>Idle listless and unimproving</**cell**> </**row**> |

* + 1. <said>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<said>** (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters. [[3.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.qLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element said {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <!-- in the header --><**editorialDecl**>  <**quotation** **marks**="all"/> </**editorialDecl**> <!-- .... --> <**p**>  <**said**>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with jewels and    gold"</**said**>, a troublemaker simpered. <**said**>"He'll trample on the Duke's camellias, spill    his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the Duke    will say, <**said**>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and Tags, O      rider of the sun!'</**said**>"</**said**> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**said** **aloud**="true" **rend**="pre(“) post(”)">Hmmm</**said**>, said a small voice in his ear. <**said** **aloud**="true" **rend**="pre(“) post(”)">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of courage, I see.    Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes — and a nice thirst to prove    yourself, now that's interesting. … So where shall I put you?</**said**> </**p**> <**p**>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought, <**said** **aloud**="false" **rend**="italic">Not    Slytherin, not Slytherin</**said**>.</**p**> |

* + 1. <salute>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [[4.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** body closer div front opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element salute {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**salute**>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</**salute**> |

* + 1. <seg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level. [[16.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE)  [6.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/VE.html#VESE)  [7.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) ] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.segLike (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element seg {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**seg**>When are you leaving?</**seg**> <**seg**>Tomorrow.</**seg**> |
| **Example** | <**s**>  <**seg** **rend**="caps" **type**="initial-cap">So father's only</**seg**> glory was the ballfield.  </**s**> |
| **Example** | <**seg** **type**="preamble">  <**seg**>Sigmund, <**seg** **type**="patronym">the son of Volsung</**seg**>, was a king in Frankish country.</**seg**>  <**seg**>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</**seg**>  <**seg**>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </**seg**> </**seg**> |
| **Note** | The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element. |

* + 1. <series>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<series>** (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [[3.11.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** biblScope cb editor gap lb milestone note pb ref respStmt title  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** availability idno  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element series {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [title](#TEI.title) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) | [biblScope](#TEI.biblScope) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [availability](#TEI.availability) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**series** **xml:lang**="de">  <**title** **level**="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Herausgegeben von</**resp**>   <**name** **type**="person">Manfred Thaller</**name**>   <**name** **type**="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</**name**>  </**respStmt**>  <**title** **level**="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</**title**>  <**biblScope**>Band 11</**biblScope**> </**series**> |

* + 1. <settlement>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settlement>** contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier collation condition decoNote heraldry material msIdentifier provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element settlement {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement** **type**="town">Glasgow</**settlement**>  <**region**>Scotland</**region**> </**placeName**> |

* + 1. <sic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sic>** (Latin for thus or so ) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [[3.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element sic {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | for his nose was as sharp as  a pen, and <**sic**>a Table</**sic**> of green fields. |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  — how <**sic**>we can</**sic**> prove or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  — how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | for his nose was as sharp as  a pen, and <**choice**>  <**sic**>a Table</**sic**>  <**corr**>a' babbld</**corr**> </**choice**> of green fields. |

* + 1. <signed>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [[4.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body closer div front opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element signed {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**signed**>Thine to command <**name**>Humph. Moseley</**name**> </**signed**> |
| **Example** | <**closer**>  <**signed**>Sign'd and Seal'd,  <**list**>    <**item**>John Bull,</**item**>    <**item**>Nic. Frog.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**signed**> </**closer**> |

* + 1. <source>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<source>** describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript description. [[10.9.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msrh) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** recordHist |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element source {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**source**>Derived from <**ref**>Stanley (1960)</**ref**> </**source**> |

* + 1. <sourceDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct list listBibl p  **figures:** table  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson |
| **Declaration** | element sourceDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  | ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.sourceDescPart](#TEI.model.sourceDescPart) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) )+  ) } |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In  <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>.  <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>   <**date**>1968</**date**>. </**bibl**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**p**>Born digital: no previous source exists.</**p**> </**sourceDesc**> |

* + 1. <sp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [[3.12.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR)  [3.12.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV)  [7.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRSP) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q quote said stage  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** change handNote typeNote  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textstructure:** body div epigraph  **transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb cit gap l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** listPerson  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element sp {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [speaker](#TEI.speaker), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?,  (  (  [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) | [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) | [model.qLike](#TEI.model.qLike) ),  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*  )+  ) } |
| **Example** | <**sp**>  <**speaker**>The reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  <**p**>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Mr Gryll</**speaker**>  <**p**>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  <**p**>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place....</**p**>  <**p**>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I    will forbear...</**p**> </**sp**> |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative. |
| **Note** | Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements.The *@who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative. |

* + 1. <space>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<space>** indicates the location of a significant space in the copy text. [[11.5.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHSP) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.dimensions (unit, @quantity) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | names the unit used for the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.dimensions | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **cm**  **mm** | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.edit |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic sp speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName person placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph front imprimatur opener salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Declaration** | element space {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.dimensions.attribute.quantity](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute unit { "cm" | "mm" }?,  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |
| **Example** | By god if wommen had writen storyes  As <**space** **quantity**="7" **unit**="minims"/> han within her oratoryes |
| **Example** | στρατηλάτ<**space** **quantity**="1" **unit**="chars"/>ου |
| **Note** | This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like. |

* + 1. <speaker>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.12.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** sp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element speaker {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**sp** **who**="#ni #rsa">  <**speaker**>Nancy and Robert</**speaker**>  <**stage** **type**="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</**stage**>  <**p**>The future? ...</**p**> </**sp**> <**list** **type**="speakers">  <**item** **xml:id**="ni"/>  <**item** **xml:id**="rsa"/> </**list**> |

* + 1. <stage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.12.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR)  [3.12.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV)  [7.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRSTA) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.stageLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element stage {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**stage** **type**="setting">A curtain being drawn.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="setting">Music</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="delivery">To Lussurioso.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="location">At a window.</**stage**> <**stage** **rend**="inline" **type**="delivery">Aside.</**stage**> |
| **Example** | <**l**>Behold. <**stage** **n**="\*" **place**="margin">Here the vp<**lb**/>per part of the <**hi**>Scene</**hi**> open'd; when    straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <**hi**>Pure Artes</**hi**> sitting on    two semi<**lb**/>circular ben<**lb**/>ches, one a<**lb**/>boue another: who sate thus till the rest of the  <**hi**>Prologue</**hi**> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in    order within the <**hi**>Scene,</**hi**> whiles the Musicke plaid</**stage**> Our  Poet knowing our free hearts</**l**> |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction. |

* + 1. <stamp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<stamp>** contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [[10.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#mswat) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element stamp {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso](#TEI.att.datable.iso),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod](#TEI.att.datable.custom),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**rubric**>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<**lb**/>  SI NON LICET<**lb**/>  NOBIS RO<**lb**/>  manii imperii <**stamp**>Bodleian stamp</**stamp**>  <**lb**/> </**rubric**> |

* + 1. <subst>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<subst>** (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [[11.3.1.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHSU) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** add cb del lb milestone pb  **transcr:** fw |
| **Declaration** | element subst {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  ( [add](#TEI.add) | [del](#TEI.del) | [model.milestoneLike](#TEI.model.milestoneLike) )+  >>  tei:constraintSpec  [  ident = "substContents1"  scheme = "isoschematron"  " must have at least one child add and at least one child del"  ] } |
| **Schematron** | <s:assert test="child::tei:add and child::tei:del"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del</s:assert> |
| **Example** | ... are all included. <**del** **hand**="#RG">It is</**del**> <**subst**>  <**add**>T</**add**>  <**del**>t</**del**> </**subst**>he expressed |
| **Example** | that he and his Sister Miſs D — <**lb**/>who always lived with him, wd. be <**subst**>  <**del**>very</**del**>  <**lb**/>  <**add**>principally</**add**> </**subst**> remembered in her Will. |
| **Example** | <**ab**>τ<**subst**>   <**add** **place**="above">ῶν</**add**>   <**del**>α</**del**>  </**subst**>  συνκυρόντ<**subst**>   <**add** **place**="above">ων</**add**>   <**del**>α</**del**>  </**subst**>  ἐργαστηρί<**subst**>   <**add** **place**="above">ων</**add**>   <**del**>α</**del**>  </**subst**> </**ab**> |
| **Example** | <**subst**>  <**del**>   <**gap** **reason**="illegible" **quantity**="5"    **unit**="character"/>  </**del**>  <**add**>apple</**add**> </**subst**> |

* + 1. <supplied>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<supplied>** signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason, typically because the original cannot be read because of physical damage or loss to the original. [[11.3.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.responsibility (cert, @resp) att.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. overbinding, faded-ink, lost-folio, omitted-in-original.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element supplied {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.responsibility),  [att.source.attribute.source](#TEI.att.source),  attribute reason { list { [data.word](#TEI.data.word)+ } }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | I am dr Sr yr <**supplied** **reason**="illegible"  **source**="#amanuensis\_copy">very humble Servt</**supplied**>  Sydney Smith |
| **Note** | The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section [11.3.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. |

* + 1. <support>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<support>** contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [[10.7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph1) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** supportDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element support {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**objectDesc** **form**="roll">  <**supportDesc**>   <**support**> Parchment roll with <**material**>silk</**material**> ribbons.   </**support**>  </**supportDesc**> </**objectDesc**> |

* + 1. <supportDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<supportDesc>** (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [[10.7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph1) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** objectDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** extent  **linking:** ab  **msdescription:** collation condition support |
| **Declaration** | element supportDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [support](#TEI.support)?, [extent](#TEI.extent)?, [foliation](#TEI.foliation)\*, [collation](#TEI.collation)?, [condition](#TEI.condition)? ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**supportDesc**>  <**support**> Parchment roll with <**material**>silk</**material**> ribbons.  </**support**> </**supportDesc**> |

* + 1. <surface>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surface>** defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [[11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)  [11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHZLAB) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **transcr:** facsimile surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb desc gap graphic label lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **transcr:** fw metamark space surface zone |
| **Declaration** | element surface {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) )\*,  ( ( [zone](#TEI.zone) | [line](#TEI.line) | [surface](#TEI.surface) | [surfaceGrp](#TEI.surfaceGrp) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surface** **ulx**="0" **uly**="0" **lrx**="200" **lry**="300">   <**graphic** **url**="Bovelles-49r.png"/>  </**surface**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Note** | The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *@lrx* - *@ulx* units wide and *@uly* - *@lry* units high. The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid. Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements. |

* + 1. <surname>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surname>** contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element surname {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**surname** **type**="combine">St John Stevas</**surname**> |

* + 1. <surrogates>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surrogates>** contains information about any representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [[10.9.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msad) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** additional |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element surrogates {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**surrogates**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **type**="gmd">diapositive</**title**>   <**idno**>AM 74 a, fol.</**idno**>   <**date**>May 1984</**date**>  </**bibl**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **type**="gmd">b/w prints</**title**>   <**idno**>AM 75 a, fol.</**idno**>   <**date**>1972</**date**>  </**bibl**> </**surrogates**> |

* + 1. <table>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [[14.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1) ] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rows** | indicates the number of rows in the table.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.count](#TEI.data.count) | | **Note** | If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.Rows should be presented from top to bottom. | | | **cols** | (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.count](#TEI.data.count) | | **Note** | If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.Within each row, columns should be presented left to right. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change handNote rendition sourceDesc typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote provenance source support surrogates  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** back body div epigraph imprimatur salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap graphic head lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure row  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate epigraph salute signed trailer  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element table {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute rows { [data.count](#TEI.data.count) }?,  attribute cols { [data.count](#TEI.data.count) }?,  (  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  ( ( [row](#TEI.row), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ | ( ( [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ),  ( ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**table** **rows**="4" **cols**="4">  <**head**>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</**head**>  <**row** **role**="label">   <**cell** **role**="data"/>   <**cell** **role**="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">Beds</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Bury St Edmund's</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">5</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">8</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">128</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Thetford</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">3</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">6</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">36</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Attleboro'</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">3</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">5</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">20</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Wymondham</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">1</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">11</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">22</**cell**>  </**row**> </**table**> |
| **Note** | Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *@rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate. |

* + 1. <tagsDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<tagsDecl>** (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [[2.3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)  [2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** rendition |
| **Declaration** | element tagsDecl {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [rendition](#TEI.rendition)\*, [namespace](#TEI.namespace)\* ) } |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</**rendition**>  <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="467"    **render**="#rend-it"/>   <**tagUsage** **gi**="title" **occurs**="45"    **render**="#rend-it"/>  </**namespace**>  <**namespace** **name**="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="para" **occurs**="10"/>  </**namespace**> </**tagsDecl**> |

* + 1. <taxonomy>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<taxonomy>** defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [[2.3.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** classDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc listBibl  **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **Declaration** | element taxonomy {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  ( [model.glossLike](#TEI.model.glossLike) | [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) )\*  | [category](#TEI.category)+  | ( ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) ), [category](#TEI.category)\* )  ) } |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="tax.b">  <**bibl**>Brown Corpus</**bibl**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a">   <**catDesc**>Press Reportage</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a1">    <**catDesc**>Daily</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a2">    <**catDesc**>Sunday</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a3">    <**catDesc**>National</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a4">    <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a5">    <**catDesc**>Political</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a6">    <**catDesc**>Sports</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d">   <**catDesc**>Religion</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d1">    <**catDesc**>Books</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d2">    <**catDesc**>Periodicals and tracts</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="literature">   <**catDesc**>Literature</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="poetry">    <**catDesc**>Poetry</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="sonnet">     <**catDesc**>Sonnet</**catDesc**>     <**category** **xml:id**="shakesSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Shakespearean Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>     <**category** **xml:id**="petraSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Petrarchan Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="haiku">     <**catDesc**>Haiku</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="drama">    <**catDesc**>Drama</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="meter">   <**catDesc**>Metrical Categories</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feet">    <**catDesc**>Metrical Feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="iambic">     <**catDesc**>Iambic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="trochaic">     <**catDesc**>trochaic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feetNumber">    <**catDesc**>Number of feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="pentameter">     <**catDesc**>>Pentameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="tetrameter">     <**catDesc**>>Tetrameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> <!-- elsewhere in document --> <**lg** **ana**="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">  <**l**>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> |

* + 1. <teiCorpus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [[4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)  [15.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **core:** teiCorpus  **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** TEI  **transcr:** facsimile |
| **Declaration** | element teiCorpus {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  [teiHeader](#TEI.teiHeader),  ( ( [model.resourceLike](#TEI.model.resourceLike)+, ( [TEI](#TEI.TEI) | [teiCorpus](#TEI.teiCorpus) )\* ) | ( [TEI](#TEI.TEI) | [teiCorpus](#TEI.teiCorpus) )+ )  ) } |
| **Example** | <**teiCorpus** **version**="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for corpus -->  </**teiHeader**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for first text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of first text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for second text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of second text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**> <!-- more TEI elements here --> </**teiCorpus**> |
| **Note** | Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.This element is mandatory when applicable. |

* + 1. <teiHeader>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page for every TEI-conformant document. [[2.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)  [15.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **text** [Default] | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc |
| **Declaration** | element teiHeader {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "text" }?,  ( [fileDesc](#TEI.fileDesc), [model.teiHeaderPart](#TEI.model.teiHeaderPart)\*, [revisionDesc](#TEI.revisionDesc)? ) } |
| **Example** | <**teiHeader**>  <**fileDesc**>   <**titleStmt**>    <**title**>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</**title**>    <**author**>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</**author**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Originally prepared by</**resp**>     <**name**>Trevor Howard-Hill</**name**>    </**respStmt**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Revised and edited by</**resp**>     <**name**>Christine Avern-Carr</**name**>    </**respStmt**>   </**titleStmt**>   <**publicationStmt**>    <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**>    <**address**>     <**addrLine**>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</**addrLine**>    </**address**>    <**idno** **type**="OTA">119</**idno**>    <**availability**>     <**p**>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</**p**>    </**availability**>    <**date** **when**="1968">1968</**date**>   </**publicationStmt**>   <**sourceDesc**>    <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,        1968)</**bibl**>   </**sourceDesc**>  </**fileDesc**>  <**encodingDesc**>   <**projectDesc**>    <**p**>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling        concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</**p**>   </**projectDesc**>   <**editorialDecl**>    <**correction**>     <**p**>Turned letters are silently corrected.</**p**>    </**correction**>    <**normalization**>     <**p**>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured          forms are not encoded.</**p**>    </**normalization**>   </**editorialDecl**>   <**refsDecl** **xml:id**="ASLREF">    <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.\*)"     **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">     <**p**>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that          listed here: <**list**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the preceding <**gi**>lb</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a period</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the ancestor <**gi**>div2</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a space</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the parent <**gi**>div1</**gi**>       </**item**>      </**list**>     </**p**>    </**cRefPattern**>   </**refsDecl**>  </**encodingDesc**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**list**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</**date**> Last checked by CAC</**item**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</**date**> LB made new file</**item**>   </**list**>  </**revisionDesc**> </**teiHeader**> |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |

* + 1. <term>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [[3.3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote keywords language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element term {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.att.cReferencing),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | A computational device that infers structure  from grammatical strings of words is known as a <**term**>parser</**term**>, and much of the history  of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers. |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **xml:id**="TDPV" **rend**="sc">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **target**="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Note** | This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element.In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *@ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *@key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *@target* and *@cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *@ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release. |

* + 1. <text>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)  [15.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Art\_poetique**  **Discours**  **Eglogue**  **Elegie**  **Fable**  **Glossaire**  **Histoire**  **Institution**  **Lettre**  **Nouvelle**  **Ode**  **Oeuvres**  **Pastorale**  **Poesie**  **Poesie\_gnomique**  **Remontrance**  **Reponse**  **Roman**  **Satire**  **Theatre**  **Traduction**  **Traite**  **chroniques**  **histoire**  **pronostication**  **roman**  **traite** | | | **subtype** | provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Banquet**  **Ode**  **Prosimetre**  **Recit\_de\_voyage**  **Sonnet**  **Traduction**  **Typographie**  **Vers** | | |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **textstructure:** back body front  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element text {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  attribute type  {  "Art\_poetique"  | "Discours"  | "Eglogue"  | "Elegie"  | "Fable"  | "Glossaire"  | "Histoire"  | "Institution"  | "Lettre"  | "Nouvelle"  | "Ode"  | "Oeuvres"  | "Pastorale"  | "Poesie"  | "Poesie\_gnomique"  | "Remontrance"  | "Reponse"  | "Roman"  | "Satire"  | "Theatre"  | "Traduction"  | "Traite"  | "chroniques"  | "histoire"  | "pronostication"  | "roman"  | "traite"  }?,  attribute subtype  {  "Banquet"  | "Ode"  | "Prosimetre"  | "Recit\_de\_voyage"  | "Sonnet"  | "Traduction"  | "Typographie"  | "Vers"  }?,  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [front](#TEI.front), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?,  ( [body](#TEI.body) | [group](#TEI.group) ),  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [back](#TEI.back), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?  ) } |
| **Example** | <**text**>  <**front**>   <**docTitle**>    <**titlePart**>Autumn Haze</**titlePart**>   </**docTitle**>  </**front**>  <**body**>   <**l**>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</**l**>   <**l**>That settles softly down upon the water?</**l**>  </**body**> </**text**> |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:  <**text**>  <**front**> <!-- front matter for the whole group -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first text -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second text -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose. |

* + 1. <textClass>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [[2.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** catRef keywords |
| **Declaration** | element textClass {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [classCode](#TEI.classCode) | [catRef](#TEI.catRef) | [keywords](#TEI.keywords) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="acprose">   <**catDesc**>Academic prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**> <!-- other categories here --> </**taxonomy**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**catRef** **target**="#acprose"/>  <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</**classCode**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="http://authorities.loc.gov">   <**list**>    <**item**>End of the world</**item**>    <**item**>History - philosophy</**item**>   </**list**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |

* + 1. <title>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<title>** contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)  [2.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)  [2.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.canonical (key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | classifies the title according to some convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | [att.typed](#TEI.att.typed) | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **contribution**  **legende**  **titre\_court**  **titre\_long**  **titre\_variante** | | **Note** | This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element. | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label monogr name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said series sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition titleStmt typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element title {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.canonical.attribute.ref](#TEI.att.canonical),  attribute type  {  "contribution"  | "legende"  | "titre\_court"  | "titre\_long"  | "titre\_variante"  }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**title**>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  18–21 July 1989</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title**>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  edition</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title** **type**="full">  <**title** **type**="main">Synthèse</**title**>  <**title** **type**="sub">an international journal for    epistemology, methodology and history of    science</**title**> </**title**> |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* and *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |

* + 1. <titlePage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msContents  **textstructure:** back front |
| **May contain** | **core:** cb gap graphic lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **textstructure:** byline docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart  **transcr:** fw metamark space |
| **Declaration** | element titlePage {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [model.titlepagePart](#TEI.model.titlepagePart) ),  ( [model.titlepagePart](#TEI.model.titlepagePart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  ) } |
| **Example** | <**titlePage**>  <**docTitle**>   <**titlePart** **type**="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</**titlePart**>   <**titlePart** **type**="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</**titlePart**>  </**docTitle**>  <**docEdition**>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</**docEdition**>  <**byline**>By T.D.</**byline**>  <**figure**>   <**head**>TP</**head**>   <**p**>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</**p**>   <**figDesc**>Printers Ornament used by TP</**figDesc**>  </**figure**>  <**docImprint**>Printed at <**name** **type**="place">London</**name**> for <**name**>T.P.</**name**>   <**date**>1612.</**date**>  </**docImprint**> </**titlePage**> |

* + 1. <titlePart>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **devise**  **main** [Default]  **motto**  **sub**  **subtitle** | | |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back docTitle front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element titlePart {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  attribute type { "devise" | "main" | "motto" | "sub" | "subtitle" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**docTitle**>  <**titlePart** **type**="main">THE FORTUNES    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS    Moll Flanders, &amp;c.  </**titlePart**>  <**titlePart** **type**="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was    Twelve Year a <**hi**>Whore</**hi**>, five times a <**hi**>Wife</**hi**> (wherof    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <**hi**>Thief,</**hi**>    Eight Year a Transported <**hi**>Felon</**hi**> in <**hi**>Virginia</**hi**>,    at last grew <**hi**>Rich</**hi**>, liv'd <**hi**>Honest</**hi**>, and died a  <**hi**>Penitent</**hi**>.</**titlePart**> </**docTitle**> |

* + 1. <titleStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)  [2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor respStmt title |
| **Declaration** | element titleStmt {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [title](#TEI.title)+, [model.respLike](#TEI.model.respLike)\* ) } |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>   <**name**>P.J. Lucas</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> |

* + 1. <trailer>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [[4.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSCO)  [4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) ] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **drama:** castGroup  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element trailer {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  (  text  | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**trailer**>Explicit pars tertia</**trailer**> |
| **Example** | <**trailer**>  <**l**>In stead of FINIS this advice <**hi**>I</**hi**> send,</**l**>  <**l**>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <**lb**/>   <**hi**>Hamans</**hi**> END.</**l**> </**trailer**>  From EEBO A87070 |

* + 1. <typeDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<typeDesc>** contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source. [[10.7.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msphwr) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** typeNote  **linking:** ab |
| **Declaration** | element typeDesc {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [typeNote](#TEI.typeNote)+ ) ) } |
| **Example** | <**typeDesc**>  <**p**>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the    15th century</**p**> </**typeDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**typeDesc**>  <**summary**>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua) typefaces</**summary**>  <**typeNote** **xml:id**="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing    similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470.</**typeNote**>  <**typeNote** **xml:id**="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</**typeNote**> </**typeDesc**> |

* + 1. <typeNote>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<typeNote>** describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [[10.7.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph2) ] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** typeDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb q quote ref reg said sic sp stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element typeNote {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.handFeatures.attributes](#TEI.att.handFeatures),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |
| **Example** | <**typeNote** **scope**="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong Italianate influence. </**typeNote**> |

* + 1. <unclear>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [[11.3.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA)  [3.4.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) ] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | <**div**>  <**head**>Rx</**head**>  <**p**>500 mg <**unclear** **reason**="illegible">placebo</**unclear**>  </**p**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include faded, illegible, eccentric\_ductus background\_noise, passing\_truck,etc. | | | **hand** | Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell  **header:** change edition extent handNote typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit corr date del desc expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig pb q quote ref reg said sic stage term title unclear  **drama:** castList  **figures:** figure table  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material msDesc stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName listPerson nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element unclear {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.ranging.attribute.atLeast](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.atMost](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.min](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.max](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.ranging.attribute.confidence](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute reason { list { [data.word](#TEI.data.word)+ } }?,  attribute hand { [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |
| **Example** | <**u**> ...and then <**unclear** **reason**="background-noise">Nathalie</**unclear**> said ... </**u**> |
| **Note** | The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter [21.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE).The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section [11.3.3.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The *@hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section [11.3.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH). |

* + 1. <watermark>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<watermark>** contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device. [[10.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#mswat) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes[att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item l label name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp said sic speaker stage term title unclear  **drama:** castItem role roleDesc  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority change edition extent handNote language rendition typeNote  **linking:** ab seg  **msdescription:** accMat acquisition additions collation condition decoNote heraldry material provenance source stamp support surrogates watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** lem rdg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docDate docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod supplied |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear  **figures:** figure  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **linking:** seg  **msdescription:** dim dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark  **namesdates:** addName country forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName roleName settlement surname  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space subst supplied |
| **Declaration** | element watermark {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |
| **Example** | <**support**>  <**p**>   <**material**>Rag paper</**material**> with <**watermark**>anchor</**watermark**> watermark</**p**> </**support**> |

* + 1. <zone>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<zone>** defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [[11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)  [11.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHZLAB) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.coordinated (@ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry) [att.global](#TEI.att.global) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) |
| **Member of** | model.linePart |
| **Contained by** | **transcr:** surface zone |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** pc  **core:** add cb choice corr del gap graphic hi lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear  **figures:** figure  **linking:** seg  **textcrit:** app  **transcr:** damage fw metamark mod space supplied surface zone |
| **Declaration** | element zone {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.style](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.rendition](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.change.attribute.change](#TEI.att.global.change),  [att.coordinated.attributes](#TEI.att.coordinated),  ( text | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [surface](#TEI.surface) | [model.linePart](#TEI.model.linePart) )\* } |
| **Example** | <**surface** **ulx**="14.54" **uly**="16.14" **lrx**="0"  **lry**="0">  <**graphic** **url**="stone.jpg"/>  <**zone** **points**="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875 10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/> </**surface**>  This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section <#PH-surfzone>. |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surface** **ulx**="50" **uly**="20" **lrx**="400"   **lry**="280">   <**zone** **ulx**="0" **uly**="0" **lrx**="500" **lry**="321">    <**graphic** **url**="graphic.png "/>   </**zone**>  </**surface**> </**facsimile**>  This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains. |
| **Note** | The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface. A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone. A zone may be of any shape. The attribute *@points* may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface. |

* 1. Model classes
     1. model.addrPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addrPart**   groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [[3.5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country geogName placeName settlement] ] idno] addrLine |

* + 1. model.addressLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addressLike**   groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#ST) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address |

* + 1. model.biblLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblLike**   groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.11.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit listBibl model.inter model.personPart relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy |
| **Members** | bibl biblStruct listBibl msDesc |

* + 1. model.biblPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblPart**   groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.11.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl |
| **Members** | model.imprintPart [biblScope pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor respStmt] availability bibl edition extent msIdentifier relatedItem series |

* + 1. model.castItemPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.castItemPart**   groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | castItem |
| **Members** | role roleDesc |

* + 1. model.choicePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.choicePart**   groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [[3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | choice |
| **Members** | abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear |

* + 1. model.common

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.common**   groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body castList div epigraph figure |
| **Members** | model.divPart [model.lLike [l] model.pLike [ab p] lg sp] [model.entryLike](#TEI.model.entryLike) model.inter [model.biblLike [bibl biblStruct listBibl msDesc] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listPerson table] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said] model.stageLike [stage] castList] |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

* + 1. model.dateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.dateLike**   groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.5.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA)  [13.3.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | imprint model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | date |

* + 1. model.descLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.descLike**   groups elements which contain a description of their function. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | gap glyph graphic space taxonomy |
| **Members** | desc |

* + 1. model.divBottom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottom**   groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div figure front lg list table |
| **Members** | model.divBottomPart [closer signed trailer] model.divWrapper [byline dateline docDate epigraph salute] |

* + 1. model.divBottomPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottomPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back model.divBottom |
| **Members** | closer signed trailer |

* + 1. model.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divLike**   groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back body div front |
| **Members** | div |

* + 1. model.divPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart**   groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.lLike [l] model.pLike [ab p] lg sp |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

* + 1. model.divTop

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTop**   groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body castList div lg list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] opener signed] model.divWrapper [byline dateline docDate epigraph salute] |

* + 1. model.divTopPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTopPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop |
| **Members** | model.headLike [head] opener signed |

* + 1. model.divWrapper

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divWrapper**   groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [[4.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divBottom model.divTop |
| **Members** | byline dateline docDate epigraph salute |

* + 1. model.editorialDeclPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.editorialDeclPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editorialDecl |
| **Members** | correction hyphenation interpretation normalization |

* + 1. model.emphLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.emphLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | foreign term title |

* + 1. model.encodingDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.encodingDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | encodingDesc |
| **Members** | charDecl classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc tagsDecl |

* + 1. model.frontPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.frontPart**   groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [[7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRFAB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | model.frontPart.drama [castList] titlePage |

* + 1. model.frontPart.drama

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.frontPart.drama**   groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only. [[7.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRFAB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.frontPart |
| **Members** | castList |

* + 1. model.gLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.gLike**   groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head idno lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext opener pc rdg series trailer |
| **Members** | g |

* + 1. model.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global**   groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address app back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList cit closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure front head imprint lem lg list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener person rdg series sp surface table text titlePage trailer zone |
| **Members** | model.global.edit [gap space] [model.global.meta](#TEI.model.global.meta) model.milestoneLike [cb fw lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note] figure metamark |

* + 1. model.global.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.edit**   groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | gap space |

* + 1. model.graphicLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.graphicLike**   groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [[3.9.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | facsimile figure glyph model.phrase surface table zone |
| **Members** | graphic |

* + 1. model.headLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.headLike**   groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | castGroup figure listBibl listPerson model.divTopPart msDesc table |
| **Members** | head |

* + 1. model.hiLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.hiLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [[3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart |
| **Members** | hi |

* + 1. model.highlighted

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.highlighted**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [foreign term title] model.hiLike [hi] |

* + 1. model.imprintPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.imprintPart**   groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.11.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | imprint model.biblPart |
| **Members** | biblScope pubPlace publisher |

* + 1. model.inter

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.inter**   groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head lem macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common rdg trailer |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl biblStruct listBibl msDesc] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listPerson table] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said] model.stageLike [stage] castList |

* + 1. model.lLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.lLike**   groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head lg model.divPart sp trailer |
| **Members** | l |

* + 1. model.labelLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.labelLike**   groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | lg model.inter surface |
| **Members** | desc label |

* + 1. model.limitedPhrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.limitedPhrase**   groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [foreign term title] model.hiLike [hi] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike [dim] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country geogName placeName settlement] ] idno] ] model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan subst] model.pPart.msdesc [dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark] [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) model.ptrLike [ref] |

* + 1. model.linePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.linePart**   groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | zone |
| **Members** | model.hiLike [hi] model.pPart.transcriptional [add app corr damage del mod orig reg sic supplied unclear] model.segLike [pc seg] choice zone |

* + 1. model.listLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.listLike**   groups list-like elements. [[3.7.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back model.inter sourceDesc sp |
| **Members** | list listPerson table |

* + 1. model.measureLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.measureLike**   groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [[3.5.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | dim |

* + 1. model.milestoneLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.milestoneLike**   groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)  [3.10.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listBibl model.global subst |
| **Members** | cb fw lb milestone pb |

* + 1. model.nameLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike**   groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country geogName placeName settlement] ] idno |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

* + 1. model.nameLike.agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike.agent**   groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt |
| **Members** | name orgName persName |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

* + 1. model.noteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.noteLike**   groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.8.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONO) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | adminInfo biblStruct glyph model.global monogr notesStmt |
| **Members** | note |

* + 1. model.offsetLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.offsetLike**   groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | geogFeat offset |

* + 1. model.pLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike**   groups paragraph-like elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability back binding bindingDesc correction decoDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc front handDesc history hyphenation interpretation model.divPart msContents msDesc normalization objectDesc person physDesc projectDesc publicationStmt recordHist sourceDesc sp supportDesc typeDesc |
| **Members** | ab p |

* + 1. model.pLike.front

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike.front**   groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | byline docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart |

* + 1. model.pPart.data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.data**   groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike [dim] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country geogName placeName settlement] ] idno] |

* + 1. model.pPart.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.edit**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase pc |
| **Members** | model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional [add app corr damage del mod orig reg sic supplied unclear] |

* + 1. model.pPart.editorial

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.editorial**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [[3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | abbr choice expan subst |

* + 1. model.pPart.msdesc

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.msdesc**   groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [[10.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#MS) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark |

* + 1. model.pPart.transcriptional

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.transcriptional**   groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [[3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.linePart model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | add app corr damage del mod orig reg sic supplied unclear |

* + 1. model.persNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a personal name. [[13.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname |

* + 1. model.persStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persStateLike**   groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.personPart |
| **Members** | persName |
| **Note** | These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others. |

* + 1. model.personLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personLike**   groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPerson |
| **Members** | person |

* + 1. model.personPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personPart**   groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [[15.2.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | person |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl biblStruct listBibl msDesc] [model.persEventLike](#TEI.model.persEventLike) model.persStateLike [persName] idno |

* + 1. model.phrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase**   groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener rdg trailer |
| **Members** | model.graphicLike [graphic] model.highlighted [model.emphLike [foreign term title] model.hiLike [hi] ] [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike [dim] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country geogName placeName settlement] ] idno] ] model.pPart.edit [model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional [add app corr damage del mod orig reg sic supplied unclear] ] model.pPart.msdesc [dimensions heraldry material stamp watermark] [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) model.ptrLike [ref] [model.ptrLike.form](#TEI.model.ptrLike.form) model.segLike [pc seg] [model.specDescLike](#TEI.model.specDescLike) |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class inter or chunk. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

* + 1. model.physDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.physDescPart**   groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | physDesc |
| **Members** | accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc objectDesc typeDesc |

* + 1. model.placeNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a place name. [[13.2.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | altIdentifier model.placeStateLike msIdentifier |
| **Members** | country geogName placeName settlement |

* + 1. model.placeStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeStateLike**   groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart [country geogName placeName settlement] |

* + 1. model.profileDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.profileDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | profileDesc |
| **Members** | langUsage textClass |

* + 1. model.ptrLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.ptrLike**   groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [[3.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl biblStruct cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase monogr relatedItem series |
| **Members** | ref |

* + 1. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**   groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | authority publisher |
| **Note** | The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail. |

* + 1. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**   groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | address availability date idno pubPlace |
| **Note** | A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency. |

* + 1. model.qLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.qLike**   groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [[3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit model.inter sp |
| **Members** | model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said |

* + 1. model.quoteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.quoteLike**   groups elements used to directly contain quotations. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.qLike |
| **Members** | cit quote |

* + 1. model.rdgLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.rdgLike**   groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a textual variation. [[12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) ] | |
| **Module** | textcrit |
| **Used by** | app |
| **Members** | rdg |
| **Note** | This class allows for variants of the <rdg> element to be easily created via TEI customizations. |

* + 1. model.resourceLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.resourceLike**   groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI teiCorpus |
| **Members** | facsimile |

* + 1. model.respLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.respLike**   groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt |
| **Members** | author editor respStmt |

* + 1. model.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.segLike**   groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE)  [17.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.linePart model.phrase |
| **Members** | pc seg |
| **Note** | The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header. |

* + 1. model.stageLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.stageLike**   groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [[7.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DROTH) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | lg model.inter sp |
| **Members** | stage |
| **Note** | Stage directions are members of class inter: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements. |

* + 1. model.teiHeaderPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.teiHeaderPart**   groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc profileDesc |

* + 1. model.titlepagePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.titlepagePart**   groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [[4.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | titlePage |
| **Members** | byline docDate docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic imprimatur titlePart |

* 1. Attribute classes
     1. att.ascribed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)  [8.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | change said sp |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **who** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@who* attribute.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Barnardo">Bernardo</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Francisco">Francisco</**role**>  <**roleDesc**>a soldier</**roleDesc**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **who**="#Barnardo">  <**speaker**>Bernardo</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">Who's there?</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **who**="#Francisco">  <**speaker**>Francisco</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element. | | |

* + 1. att.breaking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.breaking**   provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [[3.10.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | cb lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **break** | indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Sample values include** | **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue. | | In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words lāðost and reord-berendum.  <**ab**> ...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs ȝeƿorden ƿita heardoſt .  leodum la<**lb** **break**="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes  ƿeȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<**lb** **break**="no"/>  rendum hƿæt me þaȝeƿeorðode ƿuldres ealdor ofer... </**ab**> | | | |

* + 1. att.cReferencing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.cReferencing**   provides an attribute which may be used to supply a canonical reference as a means of identifying the target of a pointer. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ref term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cRef** | (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.text](#TEI.data.text) | | **Note** | The value of *@cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section [16.2.5.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACR)) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended targetThe <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the *@decls* attribute. Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element. | | |

* + 1. att.canonical

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.canonical**   provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.naming [[att.personal](#TEI.att.personal)] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.text](#TEI.data.text) | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="name 427308"   **type**="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</**name**> </**author**> | | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"   **ref**="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</**name**> </**author**> | | | **Note** | The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *@key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *@ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in [RFC 4151](#RFC4151). | | | **ref** | (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | <**name** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"  **type**="person">Seamus Heaney</**name**> | | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. | | |

* + 1. att.coordinated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.coordinated**   elements which can be positioned within a two dimensional coordinate system. | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | zone |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ulx** | gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **uly** | gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **lrx** | gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **lry** | gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | |

* + 1. att.datable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | date |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) |

* + 1. att.datable.custom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.custom**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [[13.3.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable [date] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-custom** | supplies the value of a date or time in some standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system  <**p**>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <**date** **when**="1040-03-06"   **when-custom**="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH  </**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The current world will end at the <**date** **when**="2012-12-21"   **when-custom**="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The Battle of Meggidu  (<**date** **when-custom**="Thutmose\_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</**date**>).</**p**> <**p**>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <**date** **when-custom**="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</**date**> </**p**>  Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *@when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not contrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats. | | | | **notBefore-custom** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | | **notAfter-custom** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | | **from-custom** | indicates the starting point of the period in some standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | <**event** **xml:id**="FIRE1"  **datingMethod**="#julian"  **from-custom**="1666-09-02"  **to-custom**="1666-09-05">  <**head**>The Great Fire of London</**head**>  <**p**>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part    of the city of London.</**p**> </**event**> | | | | **to-custom** | indicates the ending point of the period in some standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | | **datingPoint** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | | **datingMethod** | supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increaſe, Moderne  eſtate, and deſcription of that Citie, written in the yeare <**date** **when-custom**="1598"  **calendar**="#julian"  **datingMethod**="#julian">1598</**date**>. by Iohn Stow  Citizen of London. | | | **Note** | Here the *@calendar* attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *@datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *@when-custom* attribute value is Julian too. | | |

* + 1. att.datable.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.iso**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [[3.5.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA)  [13.3.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE) ] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable [date] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-iso** | supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.iso](#TEI.data.temporal.iso) | | The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.  <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**date** **when-iso**="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="03:00">3 A.M.</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="14">around two</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="15,5">half past three</**time**>  All of the examples of the *@when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute. | | | He likes to be punctual. I said <**q**>  <**time** **when-iso**="12">around noon</**time**> </**q**>, and he showed up at <**time** **when-iso**="12:00:00">12 O'clock</**time**> on the dot.  The second occurence of <time> could have been encoded with the *@when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not. | | | | **notBefore-iso** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.iso](#TEI.data.temporal.iso) | | | **notAfter-iso** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.iso](#TEI.data.temporal.iso) | | | **from-iso** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.iso](#TEI.data.temporal.iso) | | | **to-iso** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.iso](#TEI.data.temporal.iso) | | |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar. |
| **Note** | If both *@when-iso* and *@dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,  <**date** **when-iso**="2007-06-01" **dur-iso**="P8D"/>  indicates the same time period as  <**date** **when-iso**="2007-06-01/P8D"/>  In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading. |

* + 1. att.datable.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.w3c**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.datable [date] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.w3c](#TEI.data.temporal.w3c) | | Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <**p**>  <**date** **when**="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</**date**>  <**date** **when**="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>  <**time** **when**="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</**time**>  <**time** **when**="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</**time**>  <**date** **when**="1962-10">October of 1962</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--06-12">June 12th</**date**>  <**date** **when**="---01">the first of the month</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--08">August</**date**>  <**date** **when**="2006">MMVI</**date**>  <**date** **when**="0056">AD 56</**date**>  <**date** **when**="-0056">56 BC</**date**> </**p**> | | | This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the <**date** **calendar**="#Julian"  **when**="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</**date**>. | | | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**placeName**>Dorchester, Village,</**placeName**>   <**date** **when**="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>To    Mrs. Cornell,</**salute**> Sunday <**time** **when**="12:00:00">noon.</**time**> </**opener**> | | | | **notBefore** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.w3c](#TEI.data.temporal.w3c) | | | **notAfter** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.w3c](#TEI.data.temporal.w3c) | | |

* + 1. att.datcat

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datcat**   provides the *@dcr:datacat* and *@dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [[9.5.2.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIMVLV)  [18.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.segLike [pc seg] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | | **valueDatcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *@dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.  <**fs**    xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">  <**f** **name**="POS"   **dcr:datcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345" **fVal**="#commonNoun"   **dcr:valueDatcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/> </**fs**> |
| **Note** | ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *@dcr:datcat* and *@dcr:valueDatcat*. |

* + 1. att.declarable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declarable**   provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *@decls* attribute. [[15.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | availability bibl biblStruct correction editorialDecl hyphenation interpretation langUsage listBibl listPerson normalization projectDesc sourceDesc textClass |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **default** | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.truthValue](#TEI.data.truthValue) | | **Legal values are:** | **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected  **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default] | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). Only one element of a particular type may have a *@default* attribute with a value of true. |

* + 1. att.declaring

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declaring**   provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[15.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ab back body div facsimile front graphic lg msDesc p ref surface term text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **decls** | identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). |

* + 1. att.dimensions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.dimensions**   provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | [att.damaged](#TEI.att.damaged) att.editLike [[att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional)] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | names the unit used for the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **cm** (centimetres)  **mm** (millimetres)  **in** (inches)  **lines** lines of text  **chars** (characters) characters of text | | | **quantity** | specifies the length in the units specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | |

* + 1. att.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.divLike**   provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | div lg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.fragmentable (@part) |

* + 1. att.docStatus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.docStatus**   provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl biblStruct change revisionDesc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **approved**  **candidate**  **cleared**  **deprecated**  **draft** [Default]  **embargoed**  **expired**  **frozen**  **galley**  **proposed**  **published**  **recommendation**  **submitted**  **unfinished**  **withdrawn** | | |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **when**="2010-10-21"   **status**="published"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-10-02" **status**="cleared"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-08-02"   **status**="embargoed"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-05-01" **status**="frozen"   **who**="#MSM"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-03-01" **status**="draft"   **who**="#LB"/> </**revisionDesc**> |

* + 1. att.editLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.editLike**   provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | [att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) |

* + 1. att.edition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.edition**   provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | cb lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ed** | (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | | **edRef** | (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1937">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Methuen</**publisher**>, <**date**>1937</**date**>  </**bibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1968">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Dover</**publisher**>, <**date**>1968</**date**>  </**bibl**> </**listBibl**> <!-- .... --> <**p**>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of  the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their  strength maintaining the<**pb** **n**="411" **edRef**="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of their ancient culture,  still living their personal lives in zest and endless  novelty of action, … I saw myself still  preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid  con-<**pb** **n**="291" **edRef**="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</**p**> |

* + 1. att.fragmentable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.fragmentable**   groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.divLike [div lg] att.segLike [pc seg] ab l p |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **part** | specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect  **N** (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness. [Default]  **I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element  **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element  **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element | | **Note** | The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be be reconstituted. | | |

* + 1. att.global.analytic

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.analytic**   provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [[17.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP) ] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Members** | [att.global](#TEI.att.global) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ana** | (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *@ana* attribute appears.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | **Note** | When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts. | | |

* + 1. att.global.change

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.change**   supplies the *@change* attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated. | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | [att.global](#TEI.att.global) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **change** | points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |

* + 1. att.global.facs

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.facs**   groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a transcription of it. [[11.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX) ] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | [att.global](#TEI.att.global) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **facs** | (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |

* + 1. att.global.linking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.linking**   defines a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Members** | [att.global](#TEI.att.global) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **corresp** | (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | <**group**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1"   **xml:lang**="mi">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2"   **xml:lang**="en">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2-body1"    **corresp**="#t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**group**>  In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *@corresp*. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *@corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *@corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent. | | | <!-- In a placeography --><**place** **xml:id**="LOND1"  **corresp**="#LOND2 #GENI1">  <**placeName**>London</**placeName**>  <**desc**>The city of London...</**desc**> </**place**> <!-- In a literary personography --> <**person** **xml:id**="LOND2"  **corresp**="#LOND1 #GENI1">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Allegorical character representing the city of <**ref** **target**="LOND1.xml">London</**ref**>.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**> <**person** **xml:id**="GENI1"  **corresp**="#LOND1 #LOND2">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London’s Genius</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an      allegorical character in mayoral shows.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**>  In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them. | | | |

* + 1. att.handFeatures

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.handFeatures**   provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [[11.3.2.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | handNote typeNote |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scribe** | gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.name](#TEI.data.name) | | | **scribeRef** | points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | | **script** | characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example secretary, copperplate, Chancery, Italian, etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.name](#TEI.data.name)  separated by whitespace | | | **scriptRef** | points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | | **medium** | describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. brown, or other writing medium, e.g. pencil   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | | **scope** | specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript  **major** this hand is used through most of the manuscript  **minor** this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript | | |
| **Note** | Usually either *@script* or *@scriptRef*, and similarly, either *@scribe* or *@scribeRef*, will be supplied. |

* + 1. att.internetMedia

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.internetMedia**   provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.media [graphic] ref |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mimeType** | (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.word](#TEI.data.word)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.  <**ref** **mimeType**="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"  **target**="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/> |
| **Note** | This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in [RFC 2046](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2046.txt). The [list of types](http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/) is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *@mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list. |

* + 1. att.media

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.media**   provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.internetMedia (@mimeType)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **width** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.outputMeasurement](#TEI.data.outputMeasurement) | | | **height** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.outputMeasurement](#TEI.data.outputMeasurement) | | |

* + 1. att.msExcerpt

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.msExcerpt**   (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [[10.6.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msco) ] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Members** | msContents quote |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **defective** | indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.xTruthValue](#TEI.data.xTruthValue) | | **Default** | false | | |
| **Note** | In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole. |

* + 1. att.naming

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.naming**   provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | [att.personal](#TEI.att.personal) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated)  separated by whitespace | | |

* + 1. att.pointing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing**   defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | catRef ref |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | **Note** | One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium. | | |

* + 1. att.ranging

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ranging**   provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.dimensions [[att.damaged](#TEI.att.damaged) att.editLike [[att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional)] ] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **atLeast** | gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **atMost** | gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **min** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **max** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.numeric](#TEI.data.numeric) | | | **confidence** | specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *@min* and *@max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.probability](#TEI.data.probability) | | |
| **Example** | The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **reason**="illegible"   **extent**="one or two letters" **atLeast**="1" **atMost**="2" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York. |

* + 1. att.resourced

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.resourced**   provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **url** | (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | |

* + 1. att.responsibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.responsibility**   provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)  [17.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)  [13.1.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.editLike [[att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional)] [att.textCritical](#TEI.att.textCritical) |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cert** | (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.certainty](#TEI.data.certainty) | | | **resp** | (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | Blessed are the <**choice**>  <**sic**>placemakers</**sic**>  <**corr** **resp**="#editor" **cert**="high">peacemakers</**corr**> </**choice**>: for they shall be called the children of God. |

* + 1. att.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.segLike**   provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | pc seg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part) |

* + 1. att.sortable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.sortable**   provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[9.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIBO) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl biblStruct idno item list listBibl listPerson msDesc person term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **sortKey** | supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.word](#TEI.data.word) | | David's other principal backer, Josiah  ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term** **sortKey**="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first  cousin. | | | **Note** | The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependentDictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under ‘fourh’, and McCoy may be alphabetized under‘maccoy’, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order ‘alphabetized’ between ‘a-’ and ‘AA’. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location. | | |

* + 1. att.source

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.source**   provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference. [[3.3.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)  [8.3.4.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAWR) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.responsibility [att.editLike [[att.transcriptional](#TEI.att.transcriptional)] [att.textCritical](#TEI.att.textCritical)] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **source** | provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... -->  As Willard McCarty (<**bibl** **xml:id**="mcc\_2012">2012, p.2</**bibl**>)  tells us, <**quote** **source**="#mcc\_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a    problematic and should be a contested term.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... -->  <**quote** **source**="#chicago\_15\_ed">Grammatical theories    are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we    seem to know.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> <!-- ... --> <**bibl** **xml:id**="chicago\_15\_ed">  <**title** **level**="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</**title**>, <**edition**>15th edition</**edition**>. <**pubPlace**>Chicago</**pubPlace**>: <**publisher**>University of Chicago Press</**publisher**>   (<**date**>2003</**date**>), <**biblScope** **unit**="page">p.147</**biblScope**>.  </**bibl**> |

* + 1. att.spanning

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.spanning**   provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [[1.3.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | cb lb metamark milestone mod pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **spanTo** | indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer) | | **Schematron** | The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element  <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::\*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/></sch:assert></sch:rule> | | |
| **Note** | The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *@spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself. |

* + 1. att.styleDef

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.styleDef**   groups elements which specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | rendition |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the language used to describe the rendition.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.enumerated](#TEI.data.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language  **xslfo** Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects  **free** Informal free text description  **other** A user-defined rendition description language | | **Note** | If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use. | | | **schemeVersion** | supplies a version number for the style language provided in *@scheme*.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.versionNumber](#TEI.data.versionNumber) | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@schemeVersion]"> <sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')"> @schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified. </sch:assert></sch:rule> | | **Note** | If *@schemeVersion* is used, then *@scheme* should also appear, with a value other than free. | | |

* + 1. att.translatable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.translatable**   provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | desc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **versionDate** | specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [data.temporal.w3c](#TEI.data.temporal.w3c) | | **Note** | The *@versionDate* attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the *@versionDate* value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made. | | |

* + 1. att.witnessed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.witnessed**   supplies the attribute used to identify the witnesses supporting a particular reading in a critical apparatus. [[12.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) ] | |
| **Module** | textcrit |
| **Members** | rdg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **wit** | (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of  [data.pointer](#TEI.data.pointer)  separated by whitespace | | **Note** | If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted.This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses. Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child <wit> element. | | |

* 1. Macros
     1. data.certainty

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, data.probability may be used instead or in addition. |

* + 1. data.count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * handDesc/@hands * table/@rows * table/@cols |
| **Declaration** | data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |
| **Note** | Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted |

* + 1. data.duration.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P1,5D">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P14D">a fortnight</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*. |

* + 1. data.duration.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT45M">forty-five minutes</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P1DT12H">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P7D">a week</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.For complete details, see the [W3C specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/REC-xmlschema-2-20041028/#duration). |

* + 1. data.enumerated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * ab/@type * add/@place * add/@type * addName/@type * author/@role * biblScope/@unit * biblScope/@type * cit/@type * damage/@agent * date/@type * del/@type * dim/@type * dim/@unit * div/@type * div/@subtype * editor/@role * figure/@type * fw/@place * fw/@type * g/@type * geogName/@type * head/@type * idno/@type * lg/@type * lg/@subtype * list/@type * listBibl/@type * metamark/@place * milestone/@unit * milestone/@type * name/@type * note/@place * note/@type * orgName/@type * persName/@full * placeName/@type * pubPlace/@role * q/@type * quote/@type * ref/@type * relatedItem/@type * roleName/@type * row/@role * space/@unit * teiHeader/@type * text/@type * text/@subtype * title/@type * titlePart/@type |
| **Declaration** | data.enumerated = [data.name](#TEI.data.name) |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element. |

* + 1. data.language

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * language/@ident |
| **Declaration** | data.language = xsd:language | "" |
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.  **language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.  **script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.  **region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at <http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/iso-3166-1_decoding_table.htm>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.  **variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.  **extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.  **private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.  There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications. Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header. Examples include  sn Shona  zh-TW Taiwanese  zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong  en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone  pl Polish  es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico  es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America  The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/Overview.en.php). |

* + 1. data.name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | data.enumerated |
| **Declaration** | data.name = xsd:Name |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

* + 1. data.numeric

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.numeric =  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

* + 1. data.outputMeasurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.outputMeasurement =  token  {  pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The TEI Logo</**head**>  <**figDesc**>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <**mentioned**>TEI</**mentioned**> in    between and <**mentioned**>text encoding initiative</**mentioned**> underneath, all on a white    background.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **height**="600px" **width**="600px"   **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](http://www.w3.org/TR/2005/WD-css3-values-20050726/#numbers0). |

* + 1. data.pattern

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.pattern** (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings)  [Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression#Basic_concepts) |

* + 1. data.pointer

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * catRef/@scheme * g/@ref * keywords/@scheme * metamark/@target * unclear/@hand |
| **Declaration** | data.pointer = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by  [RFC 3986](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt) *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3987.txt) *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/ |

* + 1. data.probability

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" } |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true. |

* + 1. data.replacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.replacement = text |

* + 1. data.temporal.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.temporal.iso =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a basic and an extended format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. While ISO 8601 permits the use of both 00:00 and 24:00 to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of 24:00. |

* + 1. data.temporal.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * docDate/@when |
| **Declaration** | data.temporal.w3c =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

* + 1. data.text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.text = string |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

* + 1. data.truthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.truthValue = xsd:boolean |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue. |

* + 1. data.version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * TEI/@version |
| **Declaration** | data.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } |
| **Note** | The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied. |

* + 1. data.versionNumber

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.versionNumber =  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}" } |

* + 1. data.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * gap/@reason * supplied/@reason * unclear/@reason |
| **Declaration** | data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

* + 1. data.xTruthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" |
| **Note** | In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue. |

* + 1. macro.anyXML

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.anyXML** defines a content model within which any XML elements are permitted | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Used by** | macro.anyXML |
| **Declaration** | macro.anyXML =  element \* - (tei:\* | teix:egXML)  {  attribute \* { text }\*,  ( text | [macro.anyXML](#TEI.macro.anyXML) )\*  } |

* + 1. macro.limitedContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | desc figDesc rendition |
| **Declaration** | macro.limitedContent = ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) )\* |

* + 1. macro.paraContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | ab add corr damage del hi imprimatur l mod orig p ref reg salute seg sic signed supplied title titlePart unclear |
| **Declaration** | macro.paraContent =  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) )\* |

* + 1. macro.phraseSeq

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abbr addName addrLine author biblScope country docDate edition editor expan extent foreign forename fw genName geogFeat geogName heraldry label material name nameLink offset orgName persName placeName pubPlace publisher role roleDesc roleName settlement speaker stamp surname term watermark |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq = ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

* + 1. macro.phraseSeq.limited

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | authority language resp |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

* + 1. macro.specialPara

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | accMat acquisition additions cell change collation condition decoNote handNote item metamark note provenance q quote said source stage support surrogates typeNote |
| **Declaration** | macro.specialPara =  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.divPart](#TEI.model.divPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

* + 1. macro.xtext

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | collection dim institution repository |
| **Declaration** | macro.xtext = ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) )\* |

1. « Numéro spécial : TEI Text Encoding Initiative », dir. Jacques ANDRE, Rennes, n° 24, juin 1996. [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
2. **Louise Labé**, Lyon, Jean de Tournes, 1555 (d'après un exemplaire original disponible sur le site « [Gallica](http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/btv1b86095588/f11.image.r) » de la Bibliothèque de France) [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
3. **[Elie VINET ?]**, Poitiers, Enguilbert de Marnef, 1556 (d'après un exemplaire reproduit sur [Gallica](http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k71448r), et un autre, daté de 1557, de la Médiathèque François-Mitterrand de Poitiers en ligne sur le site des [BVH](http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/Consult/index.asp?numfiche=71)) [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
4. **François Rabelais**, Paris, Chrétien Wechel, 1546 ([BVH](http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/Consult/index.asp?numfiche=61)), et Paris, Michel Fezandat, 1552 ([Gallica](http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/btv1b8600033x/f5.image)).   
   Nous avons travaillé en parallèle sur deux exemplaires de cette édition : celui de la Bibliothèque nationale de France (Rés. Y2 2162) et la reproduction en ligne de l'exemplaire de la collection Gordon (Université de Virginie, R 258) ; les variantes constatées (et encodées) nous ont permis de découvrir que ce dernier représentait un état du texte inconnu jusqu'à présent. [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
5. Située entre l'édition « diplomatique » intégrale (qui connaît une gamme variable de principes) et l'édition régularisée.   
   Pour plus de détails, cf. les [principes éditoriaux](http://www.bvh.univ-tours.fr/Epistemon/principeseditoriaux.asp) de la base Epistemon sur le site des BVH. [↑](#footnote-ref-6)
6. Le Laboratoire LI-RFAI (dir. Jean-Yves Ramel) et le consortium Navidomass (projet ANR 2007-2009). [↑](#footnote-ref-7)
7. Voir le protocole TEI et plus particulièrement les deux chapitres « Manuscripts Description » et « Representation of Primary Sources » http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/fr/html/index-toc.html [↑](#footnote-ref-8)
8. Voir « Le codage des caractères » en fin de manuel. [↑](#footnote-ref-9)
9. Afin de s'assurer de la validité d'un fichier TEI par rapport à l'encodage XML et aux choix de balisages d'un projet, on emploie un schéma. Ce schéma est une grammaire établissant les règles d'imbrication possibles entre balises. Des projets TEI différents ont souvent des schémas spécifiques. Cf. <http://guides-reperes.mutec-shs.fr/node/58> [↑](#footnote-ref-10)
10. Tous les termes anglais seront en italique à l'exception des exemples. [↑](#footnote-ref-11)
11. Selon Jacques André, « le principe de base est "à chacun son métier..." : aux auteurs de travailler sur le "contenu" de leurs œuvres et aux typographes ou maquettistes de régler les problèmes de forme... » Voir *Cahiers Gutenberg*, article cité, p. 16. [↑](#footnote-ref-12)
12. Les identifiants peuvent être notés dans le header. [↑](#footnote-ref-13)
13. Sur le sujet, nous conseillons les travaux de Jacques André qui nous ont fortement inspirés, particulièrement « Numérisation et codage de livres anciens », *Le document numérique*, spécial « Numérisation et patrimoine », vol. 7, no 3-4, 2003. Voir le site personnel de Jacques André : <http://jacques-andre.fr/japublis/> [↑](#footnote-ref-14)
14. Mais cela peut être indispensable pour le traitement de bases de données textuelles ou l'utilisation d'outils comme XTF. [↑](#footnote-ref-15)
15. La normalisation des noms de personnes et de lieux peut s'effectuer grâce aux index régularisés sur une plate-forme de travail adéquate. [↑](#footnote-ref-16)
16. Il est même possible de réaliser une prosopographie grâce à un encodage XML/TEI. Cf. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html>. [↑](#footnote-ref-17)
17. Voir le chapitre 13 dans les Guidelines <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html>. [↑](#footnote-ref-18)
18. Dans le cas de références complètes, nous conseillons d'autres éléments imbriqués comme <date>, <editor>, <imprint>, <publisher>, <pubPlace>, etc. [↑](#footnote-ref-19)
19. Cf. la partie TeiHeader de ce manuel. [↑](#footnote-ref-20)
20. L'encodage complet de la page de titre des *Discours* est étudié dans la section "Page de titre et pièces liminaires" [↑](#footnote-ref-21)
21. Les ordinateurs codent les lettres et autres caractères sous forme de nombres. Il existe plusieurs systèmes de codage pour couvrir toutes les langues en usage. Unicode est un standard qui attribue spécifiquement un numéro unique à chaque caractère quel que soit le logiciel et quelle que soit la langue. [↑](#footnote-ref-22)